

Kerslake - cross

1 **APPEARANCES (Cont'd.):**

2 **FREDERICK L. COTTRELL, III, ESQ., and**
3 **KELLY E. FARNAN, ESQ.**
 Richards, Layton & Finger, P.A.

4 **-and-**

5 **B. JEFFERSON BOGGS, JR., ESQ.,**
 SHARON E. CRANE, Ph.D., ESQ., and
6 **ERIN M. DUNSTON, ESQ.**
 Bingham McCutcheon
 (Washington, D.C.)

7 **Counsel for Exela, Paddock**

8 **RICHARD L. HORWITZ, ESQ., and**
9 **DAVID E. MOORE, ESQ.**
 Potter Anderson & Corroon LLP

10 **-and-**

11 **ROBERT B. BREISBLATT, ESQ.,**
 STEPHEN P. BENSON, ESQ., and
12 **BRIAN J. SODIKOFF, ESQ.**
 Katten Muchin Rosenman LLP
 (Chicago, IL)

13 **Counsel for Apotex Inc.**
14 **and Apotex Corp.**

15 - - -

Kerslake - cross

1 THE COURT: Good morning. Please be seated.

2 (Counsel respond, "Good morning.")

3 THE COURT: Now the witness can take the stand.

4 EDWARD KERSLAKE, having been previously sworn as
5 a witness, was examined and testified further as follows ...

6 CROSS-EXAMINATION CONTINUED

7 THE COURT: Mr. Boggs, you have about ten more
8 minutes. I am not going to hold you to that. But that's
9 what you said yesterday. You go right ahead.

10 MR. BOGGS: Good morning, Your Honor. Thank
11 you.

12 BY MR. BOGGS:

13 Q. Good morning, Dr. Kerslake.

14 A. Good morning, Mr. Boggs.

15 Q. I would like to direct your attention to EBTX-166 in
16 your binder.

17 Do you recognize this document?

18 A. Yes, I have seen this document a few times.

19 Q. In fact, we talked about this document during your
20 deposition. Right?

21 A. We did.

22 Q. Do you recognize the author's name on this document?

23 A. I recognize the name David Small and Diane Tang-Liu as
24 employees at the time. I don't recall Michelle Wong or
25 Maria Dais.

Kerslake - cross

1 Q. I am going to call this the "Small article." This
2 article refers to a compound called AGN 191103. Correct?

3 A. I see that in the title, yes.

4 Q. Do you recognize that compound?

5 A. I don't recall.

6 Q. You --

7 A. I recognize the AGN number. But I don't recall what
8 compound that is.

9 Q. Under the introduction portion on the first page, I
10 would like you to look about halfway down the third
11 paragraph. This paragraph refers to alpha-adrenergic
12 agonists. Correct?

13 A. That's what it says.

14 Q. And that's exactly what brimonidine tartrate is.
15 Right?

16 A. I can't recall directly.

17 Q. You don't remember that?

18 A. I am not sure if it was an alpha or an alpha-2. I am
19 not sure of that. It's been eight, ten, 12 years.

20 Q. It's one of the two, though. Correct?

21 A. I believe so.

22 Q. Now, on Page 196, confirm for me that the Small
23 article says that "AGN 191103 shows enviable potency in
24 lowering intraocular pressure in rabbits and monkeys"?

25 A. That's what this document says.

Kerslake - cross

1 Q. Now, David Small was a coworker of yours. Correct?

2 A. He worked in the preclinical group, I think, the
3 pharmacokinetics group at Allergan. He was on the
4 brimonidine X team, I think, if I recall.

5 Q. And you were on the brimonidine X team?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. So he was a coworker of yours?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. JTX-095, please. Dr. Kerslake, can you please look at
10 JTX-095 in your binder?

11 A. I see that.

12 Q. Do you recognize this document?

13 A. I see my signature on it. It may have been one of the
14 animal studies that Mr. Small did for us. I am not sure
15 which one, the first or the second study that he did.

16 Q. So, David Small wrote this. Correct?

17 A. That's what it says, yeah.

18 Q. And you reviewed this document. Correct?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And that's your signature right on the front page.
21 Right?

22 A. I see that, yes.

23 Q. Now, this report was written during the time that you
24 were working to reformulate Alphagan. Correct?

25 A. It does mention brimonidine tartrate, which is the

Kerslake - cross

1 active that I was working with. So I would presume that,
2 you know, given that my signature is on it and it pertains
3 to that, then I would say probably yes.

4 Q. Can you tell from the first page of JTX-095 whether or
5 not it was the right time period?

6 A. Well, I see my signature of March, '98, which would
7 correspond to a time when I was working on the brimonidine
8 formulations. I can see that from my chart.

9 Q. You referred to the chart. A question came to my mind
10 with regard to that chart. Do you have a date on there when
11 you began working on the .15 formulation?

12 A. I do see a date there. May-June of 1998. It's that
13 bottom bar there, listed as .15.

14 Q. And what document did you find that confirmed that
15 date for you, do you remember?

16 A. I don't remember the specific documents. A lot of
17 them are meeting minutes, lab notebook references. It was
18 many hundreds of pages.

19 Q. But you don't remember, sitting here today, what
20 document it is you used to confirm that that was the date
21 you started working on the .15 formulation?

22 A. I don't know today. I think I have got references
23 where we could probably find out which document it was.

24 Q. On direct examination, you didn't show us any
25 documents that would confirm that. Right?

Kerslake - cross

1 A. No.

2 Q. Now, with regard to the Small article -- to this
3 report, excuse me, JTX-095, the title of this is "Comparison
4 of Four Ophthalmic Brimonidine Tartrate Formulations to
5 Alphagan in Albino Rabbits." Correct?

6 A. That's what it says.

7 Q. One of those formulations that was being compared was
8 the brimonidine tartrate .2 percent in Refresh Purite.
9 Right?

10 A. If you could show it to me in the document. I don't
11 recall. Again, I haven't looked at this document in detail
12 for many years.

13 Q. These are the formulations on Page 3 of 12 of the
14 report that you were testing. Correct?

15 A. I see the formulations on Page 3.

16 Q. One of the formulations was brimonidine tartrate .2
17 percent Refresh Purite. Right?

18 A. I see that 7.4. Is that the second one? Yes, I see
19 that.

20 Q. That had a pH of 7.4. Correct?

21 A. That's what it lists.

22 Q. Is that 9115X?

23 A. I can't be sure. Again, I haven't looked at this
24 entire document. Does he specify that is what the
25 formulation is in the document?

Kerslake - cross

1 Q. This is what we know about it. Did you have another
2 .2 percent formulation?

3 A. I can't recall this.

4 Q. Do you have another one listed on your time chart?

5 A. The .2 percent?

6 Q. Yes.

7 A. No, I only have one listed. But, again, it may not be
8 an exhaustive list.

9 Q. When you prepared that chart, you went back and you
10 found every formulation that you could find that you worked
11 on. Right?

12 A. I went through and found every formulation that I
13 could find but I am not sure it's an exhaustive list.

14 Q. And there is only one .2 percent formulation on that
15 chart?

16 A. There is one .2 listed on that chart.

17 Q. This is the "Discussion" section of the report. Now,
18 this is the report -- what is the purpose of these reports?

19 A. This is the result of an animal study that David would
20 have conducted, Mr. Small would have conducted to help me
21 with the different formulations we were looking at.

22 Q. Judging from the number of signatures on the front of
23 the report, I would assume these are pretty important. Is
24 that right?

25 A. They were expensive studies, so I am sure that they

Kerslake - cross

1 would want to make sure that that money was well-spent.

2 Q. In the third paragraph of the "Discussion" section, it
3 reports that a "magnitude of increase in ocular
4 concentrations produced by the Refresh Purite
5 based-reformulation." Is that correct?

6 A. Would you say that again, please?

7 Q. In this portion --

8 A. I see that, yes. I see the line, the highlighted
9 line.

10 Q. What does that mean?

11 A. What is the first?

12 If I could read the entire thing, I might have
13 some context.

14 Q. Do you have it in front of you.

15 A. What page?

16 Q. The "Discussion" section of the report.

17 A. Okay.

18 (Pause.)

19 A. I need to be honest. I don't know what he is
20 referring to here because he is talking about the first and
21 the second formulation screen. If you want me to comment on
22 this document, I would be much happier if I could read it.

23 Q. We talked about this document at length during your
24 deposition, didn't we?

25 A. I don't remember the exact discussion at the

Kerslake - cross

1 deposition. We talked about a broad range of things.

2 Q. Confirm for me that your .2 percent formulation was
3 described in this document as a simple solution?

4 A. I don't know that it was my .2 percent formulation.
5 As I said, we did a number of different formulations and I
6 can't guarantee that we only did one .2 percent formulation.

7 Q. There is only one on your chart. Right?

8 A. But I also said it wasn't an exhaustive list. It was
9 the information I was able to find to try to be helpful in
10 hundreds of pages, yes.

11 Q. And you only found one .2 percent?

12 A. I only listed one.

13 Q. You only listed one?

14 A. I tried to make it as simple as possible. I listed
15 three comparable, I think there was five but I wasn't sure.
16 I didn't want to put five, so I only put three to make it as
17 simple as possible.

18 Q. So your timeline is not complete?

19 A. It is not an exhaustive list. I can't guarantee that.

20 Q. So we can't rely on this timeline. Is that right?

21 A. The information that is listed there, you can rely on.
22 Information that is not listed there, I can't guarantee that
23 it doesn't exist.

24 Q. Now, AGN 191103 is the methyl analog of brimonidine.
25 Correct?

Kerslake - cross

1 A. I have absolutely no idea.

2 Q. You don't remember anything about a methyl analog of
3 brimonidine?

4 A. I do not. It's been 12 years. I can't remember.

5 Q. And in your work, going through the hundreds of pages
6 of documents that you say you have done, you never found
7 mention of this methyl analog. Is that right?

8 A. I specifically went through those documents to try and
9 find times that we started working in formulations, or if
10 they finished, why they finished, why we canceled them. I
11 wasn't trying to review every document. It would have been
12 physically impossible, with the time available, given how
13 these time points were scattered through the documents.

14 Q. And in doing your timeline, you never found any
15 attempts to formulate AGN 191103?

16 A. I don't recall doing so.

17 Q. David Small wrote a peer-reviewed journal article on
18 191103, and you didn't find any information at all about
19 trying to formulate that compound?

20 A. Not in the documents I went through yesterday. I went
21 through the meeting minutes of this brimonidine X team. I
22 went through the notebooks that I had. I went through the
23 available documents that I had to try to paint an accurate
24 picture.

25 Q. This is Claim 1 of the '834 patent. Do you see

Kerslake - cross

1 where -- do you recognize this claim?

2 A. The specifics of it, to be honest, if it's in my
3 patent, then I would have been aware of it at one point. I
4 can read it here.

5 Q. Dr. Kerslake, when I was taking your deposition, that
6 wasn't the first time you had your deposition taken about
7 these patents, was it?

8 A. No. I think I had it taken with the case against
9 Alcon may be four or five years ago. Is that right?

10 Q. Yes, you did. And you just don't remember anything
11 about this. Is that right?

12 A. You know, Mr. Boggs, when I was generating this chart,
13 many of these formulations, which involved significant work,
14 I couldn't remember until I saw the notebook reference in my
15 technician book that reminded me of it. I am a smart guy.
16 My memory is terrible. My wife will testify to that.

17 Q. You have a bad memory?

18 A. I do.

19 Q. I want to ask you a question about therapeutically
20 effective. Animal studies in clinical trials would be
21 necessary to determine what amounts of brimonidine tartrate
22 would be effective to provide a therapeutic benefit to a
23 patient. Correct?

24 A. Sir, I will say, as a layman, because it's been 12
25 years, and I am no expert, at least not anymore, but we had

Kerslake - cross

1 an Alphagan formulation that was out there that had a
2 brimonidine tartrate in it at a concentration that was shown
3 to be therapeutically effective.

4 In the animal studies that we did, we always
5 compared it to Alphagan so we would know if you are
6 delivering the drug to the eye at about the same proportion
7 as Alphagan, then we would -- it's plausible that the
8 formulation would be effective. It's not as if it was a
9 brand-new compound that is coming to market for the first
10 time and you have got no idea if it is going to work or not.

11 Q. On April 25th, 2005, you had your deposition taken in
12 connection with the Alcon case. Right?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. I think, if you look in your notebook, you will find
15 the deposition transcript. Have you found it, sir?

16 A. I couldn't find it in the binder. But I can read it
17 on the screen in front of me.

18 Q. Do you remember that deposition?

19 A. I do remember this, yes.

20 Q. That deposition was taken in Boston. Right?

21 A. I think so.

22 Q. It was taken at the offices of Fish & Richardson.
23 Right?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. And you were represented by counsel at that

Kerslake - cross

1 deposition?

2 A. There was somebody there from Fish & Richardson, if
3 that's what you mean, yes.

4 Q. And you were under oath?

5 A. I was.

6 Q. Turn to Page 184 of that deposition transcript.

7 A. Can I just read it on the screen?

8 Q. You mentioned Mr. Tomasch?

9 A. That's right.

10 Q. He was the attorney representing Alcon. Is that
11 right?

12 A. Yes, he was.

13 Q. I would like you to confirm for me that Mr. Tomasch
14 asked you the following question and you gave the following
15 answer.

16 "Question: And it says in an amount effective
17 to provide a therapeutic benefit to a patient.

18 "When you were at Allergan, did you do any work
19 to attempt to determine what amounts of brimonidine tartrate
20 would be effective to provide a therapeutic benefit to a
21 patient?

22 "Answer: I don't remember.

23 "Question: Do you remember whether anyone on
24 the brimonidine reformulation team did that?

25 "Answer: I can't be certain," is the answer.

Kerslake - redirect

1 "Question: Do you know how one would go about
2 determining that?

3 "Answer: Animal studies, clinical trials."

4 Were you asked those questions and did you give
5 those answers?

6 A. I see the questions and the responses, yes.

7 Q. Did you -- were you asked those questions and did you
8 give those answers?

9 A. If this is the transcript from my deposition, then,
10 yes.

11 MR. BOGGS: No further questions.

12 THE COURT: All right. Mr. Shear.

13 MR. SHEAR: Thank you, Your Honor.

14 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

15 BY MR. SHEAR:

16 Q. Good morning, Dr. Kerslake.

17 A. Good morning.

18 Q. Do you still have in front of you JTX-44? It was
19 given to you by Mr. Benson yesterday. It's not in one of
20 the big notebooks. It was loose.

21 A. Yes. Yes.

22 Q. Yesterday, Mr. Benson referred you to the first bullet
23 point under recommendations. Do you recall that?

24 A. Yes, I do.

25 Q. And he read to you the first sentence, "Develop a

Kerslake - redirect

1 brimonidine/Purite formulation equal Refresh Tears plus .2
2 percent brimonidine"?

3 Do you recall that?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. Could you read aloud the second sentence of that
6 bullet point?

7 A. "The issue will be the stability of the formulation
8 due to potential for drug oxidation."

9 Q. What does that mean?

10 A. Purite, I don't recall the exact formula, but it's
11 chlorinated -- it's an oxidative preservative, if I remember
12 correctly. You know, my fear with an oxidative preservative
13 was it was going to attack the active, the drug in this
14 formulation, maybe make it inactive so it wouldn't work.

15 MR. SHEAR: Thank you, Dr. Kerslake.

16 Your Honor, we have no further questions.

17 THE COURT: All right. Thank you, Dr. Kerslake.
18 You are excused.

19 (Witness excused.)

20 MR. SHEAR: Your Honor, do you mind if
21 Dr. Kerslake stays in the courtroom?

22 MR. BENSON: No objection, Your Honor.

23 MR. BOGGS: No objection.

24 MR. MARSDEN: Your Honor, may I clean off the
25 witness stand.

Tanna - direct

1 THE COURT: Please do.

2 MS. BROOKS: Your Honor, Dr. Tanna, a witness
3 for Apotex, has some scheduling issues. So we agreed that
4 they can call him out of order even though we are still in
5 our case-in-chief.

6 THE COURT: That is fine.

7 Mr. Breisblatt, who is going to examine?

8 MR. SODIKOFF: My name is Brian Sodikoff. I
9 represent Apotex.

10 THE COURT: Mr. Sodikoff, what is the subject
11 area?

12 MR. SODIKOFF: Dr. Tanna is a clinician who
13 treats glaucoma patients.

14 THE COURT: Okay.

15 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, may I approach the
16 Bench?

17 THE COURT: Yes. Hold on just a second.

18 ...ANGELO PETER TANNA, having been duly
19 sworn as a witness, was examined and testified as
20 follows...

21 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, may I approach?

22 THE COURT: Yes. And you have leave to approach
23 the witness freely, counsel.

24 MR. SODIKOFF: Thank you, Your Honor.

25 DIRECT EXAMINATION

Tanna - direct

1 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

2 Q. Good morning. Dr. Tanna, can you please tell me your
3 current position?

4 A. I am director of the glaucoma service at Northwestern
5 University Medical School.

6 Q. How long have you held that position?

7 A. Since July 1999.

8 Q. Dr. Tanna, if you could open up your notebook, the
9 first tab, marked as DTX-306A, can you tell me what this is?

10 A. This is my CV.

11 Q. And if I represent to you that this is the CV taken
12 from your expert report, would you verify that this
13 information is accurate?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. I would like to just quickly go through some of your
16 qualifications related to glaucoma and glaucoma treatment.

17 Dr. Tanna, where did you attend medical school?

18 A. Columbia University College of Physicians and
19 Surgeons.

20 Q. And from what years did you attend that school?

21 A. From 1990 to May 1994.

22 Q. What did you do after graduating medical school?

23 A. I took my internship in internal medicine at the
24 Graduate Hospital in Philadelphia.

25 Q. Is that hospital associated with any university?

Tanna - direct

1 A. At the time, it was associated with the hospital of
2 the University of Pennsylvania.

3 Q. And what did you do after completing your internship?

4 A. I took my residency in ophthalmology at the Wilmer Eye
5 Institute at Johns Hopkins Hospital.

6 Q. What year did you begin your residency?

7 A. In 1995.

8 Q. When did you complete it?

9 A. 1998.

10 Q. What types of things does a resident at Johns Hopkins
11 do in the ophthalmopathy program?

12 A. One immerses one's self in the medical aspects of
13 ophthalmology, including the diagnostic and management of
14 ophthalmic disease processes.

15 Q. Did you treat patients who suffered from glaucoma?

16 A. I did. The patient population that we served had a
17 very high prevalence of glaucoma.

18 Q. What did you do after completing your residency at
19 Johns Hopkins?

20 A. I did a fellowship in glaucoma, also at Johns Hopkins.

21 Q. What does one do during a fellowship?

22 A. During fellowship, although one continues to manage
23 general ophthalmological problems and general medical
24 problems, one is focused in the management and diagnosis of
25 the glaucoma disease processes.

Tanna - direct

1 Q. So your residency is ophthalmology generally and your
2 fellowship more focused on glaucoma specifically?

3 A. Correct.

4 Q. What did you do after completing your fellowship?

5 A. I was recruited to become director of the glaucoma
6 service at Northwestern University Medical School.

7 Q. What kind of training do you get during your
8 fellowship at Johns Hopkins?

9 A. During fellowship, one sees, in my case, almost
10 exclusively patients with glaucoma, some of whom have
11 diagnostic challenges pertaining to glaucoma. Some of whom
12 have therapeutic challenges pertaining to the disease.

13 So one is involved in seeing many, many patients
14 with glaucoma, diagnosing and managing the disease process.

15 Q. Did you administer or prescribe eyedrops to patients?

16 A. I did.

17 Q. Are you familiar with the eyedrop medications that
18 were used to treat glaucoma in this time frame before 1999?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Approximately how many patients were you treating
21 during your fellowship?

22 A. During my fellowship, hundreds of patients. I also
23 had my own glaucoma practice at one of the Johns Hopkins'
24 satellite facilities called Johns Hopkins Bayview Medical
25 Center. And I oversaw the care, a day-and-a-half a week, of

Tanna - direct

1 glaucoma patients there. So I would say actually during
2 that year, I probably took care of over a thousand patients
3 with glaucoma, well over a thousand.

4 Q. Dr. Tanna, are you board certified?

5 A. I am.

6 Q. Which board?

7 A. The American Board of Ophthalmology.

8 Q. Are you licensed to practice medicine?

9 A. Yes, I am, in the State of Illinois.

10 Q. Dr. Tanna, after completing your fellowship, I believe
11 you said you moved on to Northwestern.

12 Can you tell me what you did there?

13 A. I assumed a position as the director of the glaucoma
14 service.

15 Q. What are some of the responsibilities of the director
16 of glaucoma service?

17 A. I oversaw the clinical management of patients with
18 glaucoma and patients suspected of having glaucoma. I also
19 oversaw the clinical research in glaucoma at Northwestern.

20 Q. Have you been at that position since July of 1999?

21 A. Yes, I have.

22 Q. Do you have any other faculty appointments?

23 A. Well, my faculty appointment is at Northwestern. I am
24 assistant professor of ophthalmology.

25 Q. What do you do as an assistant professor of

Tanna - direct

1 ophthalmology?

2 A. I teach ophthalmology in general for medical students.
3 I also train residents and fellows regarding matters in
4 glaucoma.

5 Q. Dr. Tanna, I am on Page 2 of your CV. It mentions
6 "Editorial Board Membership."

7 Can you tell me briefly what that is?

8 A. I am on the editorial board of three journals: Survey
9 of ophthalmology, techniques in ophthalmology, and also
10 ophthalmology management.

11 Ophthalmology management is what we would
12 classify as a throw-away type magazine. It's one that is
13 used to educate general ophthalmologists in the community
14 regarding the practice of various aspects of ophthalmology.

15 Q. Dr. Tanna, have you published any articles?

16 A. I have.

17 Q. Have you published any articles that are specific to
18 brimonidine tartrate, the drug at issue here?

19 A. I have one article that pertains directly to that.
20 The lead author is Robert Feldman. I was the second author
21 on that paper. It was published in ophthalmology in 2007.
22 It was the result of a multi-center clinical trial that was
23 designed to compare the efficacy and safety of
24 brimonidine-Purite 0.15 percent versus brinzolamide, another
25 class of glaucoma medication, when used as add-on therapy

Tanna - direct

1 with a prostaglandin analog.

2 Q. Dr. Tanna, have you been involved in the writing of
3 any book chapters?

4 A. I have.

5 Q. Can you tell us briefly about that?

6 A. I have written several book chapters. I have two that
7 I am working on right now. Almost all of them pertain to
8 glaucoma.

9 Q. In addition to your work as chief of the glaucoma
10 service, do you have any staff appointments at other
11 hospitals?

12 A. Yes. I am an employee of the VA Medical Center in
13 Chicago. And I am also on staff at Children's Memorial
14 Hospital in Chicago.

15 Q. What do you do at the VA Medical Center in Chicago?

16 A. I supervise the residents' care, the residents in our
17 training program manage the patients directly, and I
18 supervise that care as it pertains to glaucoma.

19 Q. What do you do at Children's Memorial Hospital in
20 Chicago?

21 A. I manage patients with glaucoma, children with
22 glaucoma, who have failed the primary surgical modalities
23 that are used by the pediatric ophthalmologists who really
24 run the show there. So if there is a patient with whom they
25 are having a specific problem that they can't handle, I

Tanna - direct

1 manage those patients.

2 Q. So you kind of serve as an expert to them for more
3 complicated cases?

4 A. Correct.

5 Q. Do you consider yourself, as of 1999, an expert in
6 glaucoma and the treatment of glaucoma?

7 A. Yes, I do.

8 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, Apotex would tender
9 Dr. Tanna as an expert to give opinions in this case.

10 MS. BROOKS: Your Honor, we have no objection to
11 Dr. Tanna tendering opinions as an expert in the field of
12 glaucoma. We would have objections to Dr. Tanna tendering
13 any opinions as an expert, of one of skill in the art of the
14 particular patents involved.

15 THE COURT: Is that going to be an issue?

16 MR. SODIKOFF: I don't think so, Your Honor.

17 THE COURT: That is fine. The doctor is
18 accepted as offered.

19 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

20 Q. Dr. Tanna, earlier in this trial, we have gone over
21 some of the treatment options and stuff regarding glaucoma.
22 I would like to go over just a little of it briefly to kind
23 of ground your testimony.

24 Can you tell me just briefly what is glaucoma?

25 A. Glaucoma is an optic nerve disease in which elevated

Tanna - direct

1 intraocular pressure is thought to be a major causative risk
2 factor.

3 What happens in the glaucoma disease process is
4 there is damage to the optic nerve, which we can see on
5 direct examination, that results in a characteristic change
6 in the appearance of the optic nerve called cupping. That
7 occurs in association with a characteristic pattern of
8 vision loss.

9 Q. If we can call up, Mr. Rosenberg, ADX-3.

10 Can you tell me what causes glaucoma?

11 A. Well, it's a multi-factorial disease. What we know
12 now is that elevated intraocular pressure is a major
13 causative risk factor.

14 Q. What is elevated intraocular pressure?

15 A. If you think about the pressure in the eye as being
16 analogous to the pressure in a tire, for example, the
17 pressure in the eye, if it is too high for that particular
18 eye, and this varies depending on the individual patient,
19 because some patients with elevated intraocular pressure do
20 not develop glaucoma and others with what we would think of
21 as being normal intraocular pressure do go on and develop
22 glaucoma. At any rate, elevated intraocular pressure
23 results in damage to the optic nerve.

24 Q. Is that kind of reflected in the bottom middle drawing
25 there?

Tanna - direct

1 A. It is schematically represented in that drawing on the
2 left.

3 Q. How does one treat glaucoma?

4 A. The only proven means of successfully treating
5 glaucoma is by lowering the intraocular pressure.

6 Q. How do you, as a physician, lower intraocular
7 pressure?

8 A. There are three different broad categories of
9 approach. The most commonly used is the use of medications,
10 particularly eyedrops, to lower the intraocular pressure.
11 We can also use laser surgery techniques and incisional
12 surgical techniques.

13 Q. I would like to focus on eyedrops, because I think
14 that's kind of the focus of this litigation.

15 Back in 1999, were there glaucoma eyedrops that
16 were available for treating glaucoma?

17 A. Yes. There were seven different classes of
18 medications available in 1999 and prior to that.

19 Q. Were you aware of each of those medications?

20 A. Yes, I was.

21 Q. Is it your opinion that those of skill in the art
22 would be aware of those different options?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. I would like to turn to the next tab in your book,
25 DTX-295, two tabs further.

Tanna - direct

1 Dr. Tanna, can you tell me what this article is?

2 A. Yes. This is an article that was published in 1998 in
3 the New England Journal of Medicine. The lead author is
4 Wallace L.M. Alward. He is at the University of Iowa. He
5 is a very well-respected glaucoma expert. It describes the
6 medical management of glaucoma. It is a review article that
7 is really aimed toward non-ophthalmologists.

8 Q. Dr. Tanna, turning to the numbered Page 1301. I think
9 it's the fourth page of this document. Can you tell me what
10 this page describes?

11 A. This page summarizes the beta adrenergic antagonists
12 drugs, also known as beta-blockers.

13 Q. Were these beta-blockers known to you as one of skill
14 in the art before 1999?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Can you look at Table 2 of this document?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. What does Table 2 tell you?

19 A. This summarizes or lists the medications in this
20 particular class.

21 Q. Are you -- were you aware of these medications back
22 before 1999?

23 A. Yes, I was.

24 Q. Which medications did you prescribe most frequently
25 out of this list?

Tanna - direct

1 A. Timolol has always been the most frequently
2 prescribed, at least in the United States, out of this list.
3 Though, in Japan, carteolol may be more commonly prescribed.

4 Q. What does this table tell you about the availability
5 of timolol back before 1999?

6 A. In terms of the concentrations available, it tells us
7 that timolol was available in two different concentrations,
8 0.25 percent and 0.5 percent.

9 Q. Turning to the next page of this document, I think you
10 mentioned prostaglandin analogs. Can you tell us briefly
11 what those are?

12 A. Those are currently the most commonly prescribed
13 medications. They were available prior to 1999 as well.
14 They lower the intraocular pressure by increasing the amount
15 of fluid that can leave the eye through one of the pathways
16 called the uveoscleral pathway.

17 Q. Can you tell me what the next subheading here is?

18 A. Adrenergic Agonist Drugs.

19 Q. Looking at Table 3, are you familiar with those drugs?

20 A. Yes, I am. Many of them are available in different
21 concentrations.

22 Q. Brimonidine -- is the brimonidine there the
23 brimonidine tartrate?

24 A. Yes. It's referring to the original formulation in
25 Alphagan.

Tanna - direct

1 Q. That was available before 1999. Correct?

2 A. That's correct.

3 Q. I would like to turn two pages further.

4 THE COURT: Doctor, that table that we were just
5 looking at, where I see brimonidine, is that brimonidine
6 tartrate, or is there a difference? Are we talking about
7 the same thing?

8 THE WITNESS: Yes, Your Honor. We are talking
9 about the same thing. It is referring to the original
10 formulation, which we have just been calling Alphagan.

11 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

12 Q. Just while we are still there in Table 3, what is
13 apraclonidine?

14 A. Apraclonidine was commercially known as Iopidine. It
15 still available. It is an another alpha-2 selective
16 adrenergic agonist. So it is in the same class and even the
17 same subclass as the brimonidine. It was available in two
18 different concentrations, 0.5 percent and 1 percent.

19 Q. Turning to the next page, 1303 on the bottom, this
20 page mentions carbonic anhydrase inhibitors.

21 Can you tell me what those are?

22 A. That is a class of compounds that lowered the
23 intraocular pressure by reducing the amount of fluid
24 produced inside the eye. And these are available most
25 commonly as eyedrops but they are also available in oral or

Tanna - direct

1 intravenous forms.

2 Q. Turning to the next page, it mentions cholinergic
3 agonists. Can you tell me what those are?

4 A. The cholinergic agonists are a family of compounds
5 that bind to a receptor on the muscles in the ciliary body,
6 the muscarinic receptor. That causes contraction of those
7 muscle fibers. And some of those muscle fibers attach to a
8 part of the drainage pathway that causes the drainage
9 pathway to physically open up. And this results in a
10 reduction in pressure by way of an increased amount of fluid
11 flow out of the eye through the trabecular meshwork.

12 Q. Looking at Table 5, are you familiar with the
13 different medications listed there?

14 A. Yes, I am.

15 Q. Were those medications available in the formulations
16 that are listed?

17 A. Yes, they were.

18 Q. Looking at pilocarpine hydrochloride, the second one
19 listed as a direct-acting cholinergic agonist, were those
20 concentrations all available to you before 1999?

21 A. They were, but I only used the 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2, 4, and
22 6 percent concentrations. The other ones, although they
23 were available, were fairly rarely and uncommonly used.

24 Q. Was it uncommon for a certain medication to be
25 available in multiple formulation strengths?

Tanna - direct

1 A. No. Several of them were available in multiple
2 concentrations.

3 Q. Overall, how many different, if you can approximate,
4 how many different medications for glaucoma were available
5 before 1999?

6 A. I remember calculating this for Mr. Shear during my
7 deposition. I can estimate. But I cannot tell you exactly.
8 When you asked me that, would you mean to count generics and
9 brand name products as two separate?

10 Q. First, how many different classes of medications?

11 A. There are seven classes of medications.

12 Q. And do some of those classes have subcategories?

13 A. Yes, definitely. For example, we would call the
14 cholinergic agonists, which are described in this table, we
15 can subclassify them as direct acting and indirectly acting.

16 So there are subclasses for some of them. Not
17 for all.

18 For example, the prostaglandin analogs, I
19 consider just one class, prostaglandin analogs.

20 Q. Dr. Tanna, I believe you were here when Dr. Whitcup
21 was testifying about how brimonidine tartrate works. Were
22 you here for that part?

23 A. I did not hear him discuss that particular part.

24 Q. Well, he mentioned a dual mechanism of action for
25 brimonidine tartrate. And he looked at ADX-14. If I can

Tanna - direct

1 put that back on the board.

2 Can you give me a basic description of what we
3 see in this demonstrative?

4 A. Well, despite the title, what this demonstrates is
5 what we would call aqueous humor dynamics. This is at a
6 basic level that medical students, I would expect a medical
7 student to understand.

8 Can I touch the screen?

9 This part of the eye is called the ciliary body.
10 These are the areas in which the fluid that is produced by
11 the eye is secreted into the eye.

12 So fluid flows into the eye here, and then,
13 typically, it travels in between the iris, which varies in
14 color, depending on the individual, from blue to brown, and
15 the lens, the lens is the part of the eye that, as it
16 becomes cloudy, we call cataract.

17 So the fluid flows in between, and then it flows
18 through the pupil and then into the front chamber of the eye
19 called the anterior chamber. In the anterior chamber, there
20 are two exit pathways, effectively. One is the classic
21 pathway. That is called the trabecular meshwork. The other
22 is the alternate pathway, or the uveoscleral pathway. And
23 fluid has to travel through the ciliary body face and can
24 exit the eye through that pathway. The dual mechanism of
25 action of brimonidine refers to the fact that brimonidine

Tanna - direct

1 reduces the production of aqueous humor at the ciliary body
2 and also increases the facility with which the fluid can
3 exit the eye through the trabecular meshwork -- through the
4 uveoscleral pathway.

5 Q. Dr. Tanna, you have mentioned a lot of structures
6 here. I can't personally remember them. I just wonder, is
7 it your opinion that this is all well-known to those of
8 skill in the art before 1999?

9 A. Yes, it was well-known prior to 1999. There was a
10 publication by Carol Torres from Carl Camras lab at the
11 University of Nebraska in Omaha which described this dual
12 mechanism of action in 1995.

13 Q. So the fact that brimonidine stops the production of
14 aqueous humor and then also allows it to leach out easier,
15 that was known before 1999?

16 A. Yes, it was.

17 Q. If I could guide you to DTX-11, which is the next tab
18 in our book?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Is this the article that you just referred to?

21 A. This is the article I referred to.

22 Q. When was this article published?

23 A. 1995.

24 Q. What is the conclusion of the article?

25 A. The conclusion states that brimonidine -- excuse me.

Tanna - direct

1 I am going to read it verbatim. The brimonidine induced
2 reduction in IOP, which refers to intraocular pressure, in
3 humans is associated with a decrease in aqueous flow and an
4 increase in uveoscleral outflow.

5 Q. I would like to guide you to JTX-100, which is the
6 next one in our chart here. Can you tell me what this
7 document is?

8 A. This is a document that lists the components of
9 various formulations of Alphagan, including what is here
10 referred to as the original Alphagan, which is the 0.2
11 formulation that has been discussed in the courtroom.
12 That's all the way on the right. And, also, Alphagan P 0.15
13 percent, which was the marketed Alphagan P. That's the
14 second column.

15 Q. Okay.

16 A. I am sorry. It is the one to the left of the one that
17 was just highlighted.

18 Q. So the one to the right, that is the original Alphagan
19 formulation. Right?

20 A. Correct.

21 Q. That was available before 1999?

22 A. Yes, it was.

23 Q. So if I refer to that as the prior art Alphagan
24 formulation, will you understand that's what I am talking
25 about?

Tanna - direct

1 A. I will.

2 Q. Now, the prior art Alphagan formulation, or just
3 eyedrops generally, eyedrops with active ingredients, what
4 are they generally made of?

5 A. Well, an eyedrop is typically composed of an active
6 ingredient or maybe more than one active ingredient, there
7 are some combination products, along with a vehicle. And
8 the biggest component of most eyedrop vehicles is water.
9 But the other components I consider a vehicle, too.

10 That includes a preservative, a viscosity
11 building agent, buffers that will stabilize the pH of the
12 solution, and also electrolytes, which affect the tonicity
13 of the overall solution.

14 Q. Looking at JTX-100, can you circle what you would
15 consider the vehicle?

16 A. For the original Alphagan formulation?

17 Q. For the original Alphagan formulation, thank you.

18 MS. BROOKS: Your Honor, I am going to object to
19 this. I believe this is outside Dr. Tanna's area of
20 expertise and now we are getting into formulations.

21 MR. SODIKOFF: I am just briefly touching that,
22 in Dr. Tanna's practice, people refer to that as the vehicle
23 and the top part as the active ingredient.

24 THE COURT: Fair enough. I will overrule that
25 objection. You can answer that question, Doctor.

Tanna - direct

1 THE WITNESS: Can you repeat the question?

2 THE COURT: Repeat the question as you just
3 framed it.

4 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

5 Q. As one of skill of the in the art before 1999 --

6 THE COURT: I think he is a practitioner.

7 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

8 Q. As a practitioner, before 1999, would you refer to
9 what you have circled there as the vehicle for original
10 Alphagan?

11 A. Yes, from BAK down to purified water.

12 Q. And what would you refer to as the, if anything, as
13 the active ingredient?

14 A. The active ingredient is brimonidine tartrate.

15 Q. Dr. Tanna, have you formed any opinions in this case
16 regarding the original Alphagan?

17 A. Yes, I have. I have formulated three broad opinions
18 regarding original Alphagan.

19 Q. Can you please tell me what your first broad opinion
20 is?

21 A. The first opinion is that one of skill in the art
22 prior to July 1999 would have been motivated --

23 MS. BROOKS: Objection, Your Honor.

24 THE COURT: I think we are now in that area
25 where Ms. Brooks originally indicated there would be a

Tanna - direct

1 dispute, if the witness were called upon to discuss, to
2 present himself as one skilled in the art. I thought we had
3 agreement that wasn't going to be an issue.

4 MR. SODIKOFF: He is not one of skill in the
5 art. But I think that his opinion and testimony is going to
6 show that one of skill in the art was aware of what
7 clinicians looked for in vehicles.

8 THE COURT: That is why he is a clinician.
9 Right?

10 MR. SODIKOFF: Yes. But also that one of skill
11 in the art --

12 THE COURT: Let's go over here and talk about
13 it.

14 (The following took place at sidebar.)

15 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, we are not going into
16 much. What we would like to do is show as a clinician he
17 would look at this molecule and the Alphagan formulation.
18 He is going to comment on what he likes and doesn't like
19 about the vehicle.

20 As a clinician, we think that also has some
21 impact on one of skill in the art because they are
22 formulators who are trying to sell these drugs to
23 clinicians.

24 THE COURT: That may be an argument that you can
25 make. I think Ms. Brooks essentially is saying, look, we

Tanna - direct

1 didn't understand that he was going to discuss, have a
2 discussion as one skilled in the art. It may be semantics,
3 it may not be.

4 MR. SODIKOFF: I think it is. Maybe I can clear
5 it up.

6 THE COURT: Ms. Brooks.

7 MS. BROOKS: Yes, Your Honor. We believe that
8 what Dr. Tanna is going to try to do is say what one of
9 skill -- I think he just started to say what would have been
10 obvious to one of skill in the art and what one of skill in
11 the art would have been motivated to do.

12 THE COURT: And you have an objection to that?

13 MS. BROOKS: Yes, Your Honor.

14 THE COURT: And at the outset of the testimony
15 it didn't appear there was going to be a dispute about that.

16 I think, if you rephrase the question, if you
17 perhaps approach it from a different angle, rather than
18 asking him as one skilled in the art, unless we need to have
19 a debate about that.

20 MR. SODIKOFF: I think we do, Your Honor.

21 I don't think any of the experts by either side
22 are technically one of skill in the art. What they are here
23 to do is shed their expertise on what they believe one of
24 skill in the art would be motivated to do. What I would
25 like to show with Dr. Tanna --

Tanna - direct

1 THE COURT: Are we talking about one of skill in
2 the art of formulations and reformulation?

3 MR. SODIKOFF: Yes. But for us, one of skill in
4 the art also understands not just formulating but they also
5 look to how that is actually used to treat patients. You
6 are formulating for a reason.

7 THE COURT: You would hope that medical doctors
8 would understand that.

9 MS. BROOKS: So, Your Honor, first of all, I beg
10 to differ. Our experts actually are all one of skill in the
11 art. And they have prepared their experts where they define
12 who one of skill in the art is and they fall within that
13 definition.

14 Dr. Tanna in his expert report said that he
15 relied on their expert, Dr. Banker's definition of one of
16 skill in the art. And Dr. Banker has a very lengthy
17 definition of that. Dr. Tanna doesn't meet it. I would
18 cite the Court to just one example -- there is plenty of
19 them -- but the Sundance v. DelMonte case at 550 F.3d 1356,
20 where the Federal Circuit held that it was an abuse of
21 discretion to permit a witness to testify as an expert on
22 the issues of noninfringement or invalidity unless that
23 witness is qualified as an expert in the pertinent art.
24 Testimony proffered by a witness lacking relevant technical
25 expertise fails the standard of admissibility under Federal

Tanna - direct

1 Rule of Evidence 702.

2 Indeed, where an issue calls for consideration
3 of evidence from the perspective of one of ordinary skill in
4 the art, it is contradictory to Rule 702 to allow a witness
5 to testify on the issue who is not qualified as an expert,
6 technical expert in the art.

7 It goes on on the next page and specifically
8 addresses obviousness: Nor may a witness not qualified in
9 the pertinent art testify as an expert on obviousness or any
10 of the underlying technical questions, such as the nature of
11 the claimed invention, the scope and content of the prior
12 art, the differences between the claimed invention and the
13 prior art, or the motivation of one of ordinary skill in the
14 art to combine these references to achieve the claimed
15 invention.

16 THE COURT: I am going to let Mr. Breisblatt
17 weigh in here a little bit.

18 MR. BREISBLATT: Your Honor, that is a pre-KSR
19 case, I suspect.

20 MS. BROOKS: Actually, December of 2008.

21 MR. BREISBLATT: But the underlying thing is,
22 this expert is fully qualified. He has gone over his
23 qualifications for the very area we are here for. The area
24 we are here for is treating the eye. The formulation part
25 of it, because these claims are geared to formulation, are

Tanna - direct

1 not done in a vacuum, as Mr. Sodikoff has said.

2 THE COURT: He has framed your position.

3 I will let you get back in.

4 All of this, there has been plenty of time in
5 the lead-up to being here to either have raised this with me
6 or to have discussed it among yourselves. So I would expect
7 there has been some discussion. You have exchanged expert
8 reports. Clearly, the rules provide ample opportunity for,
9 as Ms. Brooks points out, for experts to be identified in
10 their fields.

11 If he has not been identified as one skilled in
12 the art, and if this is a surprise to the other side, I am
13 not going to permit it. It sounds like that's what is
14 happening.

15 MR. SODIKOFF: It is not a surprise at all, Your
16 Honor. If I can grab his report and quote it.

17 THE COURT: Sure.

18 MR. BREISBLATT: I was going -- it has nothing
19 to do with this issue. I just want to note to the Court
20 that this is Mr. Sodikoff and Mr. Benson's first trial. I
21 appreciate the Court's patience.

22 THE COURT: I fully recognize that. It is fine.
23 You got to start somewhere. A Bench trial is the best place
24 to start.

25 MR. SODIKOFF: The opinions formed, A, what was

Tanna - direct

1 known in the field of ophthalmology regarding the use of
2 ophthalmic medications specifically in regard to the use of
3 a formulation containing brimonidine for reducing
4 intraocular pressure.

5 B. Whether a person of ordinary skill in the
6 art would have an apparent reason or motivation to provide
7 an ophthalmic solution containing a compound known to
8 effectively lower intraocular pressure with a preservative
9 known to be well tolerated and less toxic to the ocular
10 surface than the prior art formulations or had a reasonable
11 expectation of success that they could do so without undue
12 experimentation.

13 THE COURT: This is the doctor's report.

14 MR. SODIKOFF: Yes, sir. They deposed him on
15 this report. Further, throughout the report, and what we
16 plan on having him testify, is that there was a
17 disadvantages to BAK, and that was known in the art. And he
18 believes that that would motivate someone to switch and not
19 use BAK because it was known to be toxic.

20 THE COURT: You are familiar with that.

21 MS. BROOKS: I am, Your Honor. Here is our
22 response. We have no objection to Dr. Tanna talking about
23 what was known in the field of ophthalmology. The balance
24 of his report, where he talks about in his personal
25 experience how BAK has an allergic effect, how he prefers

Tanna - direct

1 Purite, why that would motivate him as an ophthalmologist to
2 use a BAK-free medication, we have no objection to any of
3 that. It's when he starts talking about what one of skill
4 in the art would or would not have done.

5 THE COURT: You have got an expert to counter
6 their expert on this area.

7 MR. SODIKOFF: Yes. For most of it. My point
8 is, Dr. Tanna -- and I can ask him about this -- advises
9 medical companies.

10 THE COURT: That is fine. But I am not going to
11 let him testify beyond his expert report. There are
12 reasonable inferences that a fact-finder can draw from his
13 testimony. I understand what your argument is. It's just
14 that the rules shouldn't permit -- I am not going to allow a
15 breach of the rules. If the report -- let me ask you this,
16 Ms. Brooks: Given the sentence --

17 MR. SODIKOFF: The report is very clear. He
18 went into excruciating detail on this.

19 THE COURT: What counsel just read, in Section
20 2, Opinions Formed, that sentence that you are familiar
21 with, that he just read into the record -- let me take
22 another look at it.

23 (Pause.)

24 THE COURT: It does use the terms of art, one of
25 ordinary skill in the art who is asked to opine and

Tanna - direct

1 formulate an opinion on whether one of such skill would have
2 a reason or motivation to provide an ophthalmic solution
3 containing a compound known to effectively lower intraocular
4 pressure and a preservative known to be well tolerated and
5 less toxic to the ocular surface than prior art formulations
6 or had a reasonable expectation of success --

7 MR. SODIKOFF: He goes through excruciating
8 detail --

9 THE COURT: -- without undue experimentation.

10 This would seem to be the kind of question, if
11 he answered it, that should permit him to testify as one of
12 skill in the art in addition to being an expert clinician,
13 don't you think?

14 MS. BROOKS: He certainly set that out as one of
15 the questions. But then when we get into the bulk of his
16 report, it is all done from the perspective of the
17 ophthalmologist. And he has no idea whether -- when he
18 talks about expectation of success, he is not talking about
19 expectation of success in the formulation. He is talking
20 about expectation of success in the patient.

21 THE COURT: The treatment.

22 MS. BROOKS: In the treatment. We have no
23 objection to any of that.

24 What we do have an objection to is him getting
25 into whether the formulators would have been motivated based

Tanna - direct

1 on what they knew about Purite, based upon what they knew
2 about brimonidine, based upon what they knew about
3 carboxymethylcellulose --

4 MR. SODIKOFF: Their claims, we have looked at
5 them all day and week, say a therapeutically effective
6 amount. Who determines therapeutically effective? That is
7 a clinician. That is a doctor. That is not a formulator.
8 One of skill in the art, that is a relevant inquiry as to
9 what is a therapeutically effective amount, what would a
10 clinician look for to find a medication that is
11 therapeutically effective and the best one possible.

12 THE COURT: What is your reaction to that?

13 MS. BROOKS: My reaction to that is that is one
14 aspect of the claimed invention, the claimed invention that
15 has multiple elements dealing with polyanionic polymers,
16 dealing with brimonidine tartrate, dealing with
17 quinolines --

18 THE COURT: Mr. Breisblatt, you got to calm
19 down. I am having a talk with this young man. You are
20 chomping at the bit.

21 MR. BREISBLATT: I am excited, Your Honor.

22 THE COURT: Understanding what you just said,
23 clinicians, nevertheless, don't they rely on formulators?
24 They don't formulate in realtime. They are given
25 concentrations of medicines, or a range, maybe, that are

Tanna - direct

1 made available to them. And they make determinations, I
2 guess they have to have some knowledge about chemistry, they
3 are physicians, but they are not expert in the area of
4 formulations. Aren't they relying on formulators to give
5 them therapeutically effective drugs?

6 MR. SODIKOFF: I would say no. Dr. Tanna
7 advises pharmaceutical companies. They call him and say,
8 what is a better preservative from the clinical data?

9 That is the kind of thing that a clinician does.
10 They are involved.

11 THE COURT: I am sure the formulators constantly
12 are in touch with practitioners. That makes sense.

13 MR. SODIKOFF: They are getting feedback. They
14 take doctor's notes.

15 THE COURT: But for purposes of evidence today
16 and issues of fairness and surprise and all of those -- and
17 I am not making a ruling that they have been surprised --

18 MR. SODIKOFF: I feel like I have been surprised
19 with this objection, to be honest.

20 THE COURT: You shouldn't be surprised by any
21 objection made in court.

22 Mr. Breisblatt.

23 MR. BREISBLATT: Your Honor, I finally got a
24 chance to look at the case. We need to understand that the
25 expert witness we are talking about here was Mr. Bliss, a

Tanna - direct

1 patent law expert. And we know how the Court feels about
2 patent law experts.

3 THE COURT: I know how I feel about patent law
4 experts.

5 MR. BREISBLATT: This discussion and their rules
6 dealt with the fact that Mr. Bliss, this patent lawyer,
7 began giving opinions. We are not talking about a technical
8 guy.

9 THE COURT: Is that true?

10 MS. BROOKS: This particular case, Your Honor.
11 We wanted to find a post-KSR citation for Your Honor. This
12 is 2008. We can give Your Honor a plethora of cases that
13 hold the same proposition.

14 THE COURT: That makes sense. Mr. Breisblatt's
15 point is the language here deals with not the ilk of
16 expert --

17 MS. BROOKS: That's correct, Your Honor. They
18 are talking about a patent law expert.

19 THE COURT: It may be the case that the
20 doctrinal language, the precepts, the standards that are
21 outlined and articulated by the Court apply equally. That
22 makes sense to me.

23 MS. BROOKS: That would be our position.

24 THE COURT: But I think I am going to try to
25 split this baby a little bit, because we don't have time for

Tanna - direct

1 me to read through the expert report. One of Ms. Brooks's
2 contentions, counsel, is that while the proposition is set
3 out in Paragraph B in the manner just read into the record,
4 that the report -- I know you two differ on this. She says
5 it addresses the issue from the standpoint of a clinician
6 and not a reformulator, and given that they were not, I
7 assume you are going to say, motivated, and did not examine
8 him during deposition in that regard --

9 MS. BROOKS: We actually did examine him to the
10 extent he has absolutely no formulation experience. He has
11 never formulated. He has never done pre-formulation. We
12 did examine him to that extent and then simply elicited the
13 basis of his opinion, which is all from the
14 ophthalmologist's perspective.

15 THE COURT: Okay. I am going to let him
16 testify. It's a Bench trial. In a jury trial, I might not.

17 I think I am able, will be able to, especially
18 given this discussion, should it come to pass that I am more
19 persuaded to your point of view, I will be able to filter
20 out that testimony.

21 So I am going to let him testify. We have got
22 him here. I think that's the better solution.

23 MS. BROOKS: Thank you, Your Honor.

24 MR. SODIKOFF: Thank you, Your Honor.

25 (End of sidebar conference.)

Tanna - direct

1 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

2 Q. Let's get re adjusted here. We are looking at the
3 active formulation. You commented that you see an active
4 ingredient and a group vehicle below?

5 My question to you is: Do you have an opinion
6 regarding the use of BAK in this formulation?

7 A. Yes, I do. Benzoalkonium chloride was known prior to
8 July 1999 to have toxic effects on the surface of the eye.
9 So my opinion is that one of skill, if I may use that
10 language, Your Honor, would have been motivated prior to
11 July 1999 to attempt to use an alternative preservative, one
12 that is safer and gentler on the surface of the human eye.

13 Q. Dr. Tanna, just to go back again to your expertise,
14 have you presented at glaucoma symposiums and other
15 conferences regarding glaucoma?

16 A. I have. I presented at various scientific meetings,
17 including ARVO, which is the Association of Research and
18 Vision Ophthalmology. That's actually my primary place of
19 presentation. But I have also done various presentations on
20 behalf of drug companies, including presentations that
21 specifically deal with the toxic effects of benzylalkonium
22 chloride.

23 Q. When your at these conferences, are they generally
24 attended by people from the drug companies, themselves?

25 A. They are present at these meetings, yes.

Tanna - direct

1 Q. Do you present information regarding, for example, the
2 toxicity of BAK at a meeting such as this?

3 A. I have -- at the types of meetings I just described,
4 scientific meetings, for example, what we call ARVO, the
5 annual meeting of the Association of Research and Vision
6 Ophthalmology, I have -- the closest I have come to
7 presenting something relating to formulation is a paper on
8 the thermal stability of three different prostaglandin
9 analogs.

10 Regarding benzoalkonium chloride, I haven't
11 published anything or presented anything at scientific
12 meetings that specifically deals with benzoalkonium
13 chloride. However, I did serve as a consultant to Alcon
14 regarding the reformulation of travoprost, which was one of
15 the prostaglandin analogs that was originally formulated
16 with benzene alconium chloride, and is now available both
17 traditionally formulated with benzoalkonium chloride and
18 also reformulated with a newer, gentler preservative.

19 Q. Can you just generally tell me, I don't want to get
20 into Alcon's confidential information, but what your role
21 was as a consultant with Alcon?

22 A. To guide them regarding the potential value of such
23 product. And also, I used that preservative, alternatively
24 preserved product, which is now called Travatan Z, on a
25 compassionate use basis on two patients prior to its FDA

Tanna - direct

1 approval. So I did deal with parts of the NDA for that
2 product. I submitted my own IND to the ADA regarding the
3 use of that product in two patients.

4 And because of my early experience with it, I
5 was asked to present at various meetings, that were
6 commercial meetings that Alcon conducted throughout the
7 United States, to promote that new product when it did
8 become approved.

9 Q. I believe you mentioned that -- let me go back to ask
10 what your opinion of BAK is.

11 A. Benzoalkonium chloride, BAK, is known to have toxic
12 and proinflammatory effects on the surface of the human eye.

13 Q. What is your opinion regarding BAK based on?

14 A. It is based on peer-reviewed literature published
15 before July 1999.

16 Q. Can I guide you to the next tab, DTX-283?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Can you tell me what this is?

19 A. This is a paper that was published by the group
20 Moorfields Eye Institute in London in the British Journal of
21 Ophthalmology in 1993. It is called, "Adverse Effects of
22 Topical Anti Glaucomas Medications on the Conjunctiva."

23 Q. Where was this journal published?

24 A. British Journal of Ophthalmology.

25 Q. When was it published?

Tanna - direct

1 A. 1993.

2 Q. Is this a well-read journal?

3 A. Yes, it is an important journal, even in the United
4 States.

5 Q. What do the authors describe in this report?

6 A. This was a study that was designed to determine if the
7 chronic use of antiglaucoma medications in patients who are
8 about to have filtering surgery or glaucoma surgery has an
9 adverse impact on the success rates of that surgery.

10 Q. Do the authors make any conclusions regarding BAK
11 specifically?

12 A. The authors attribute -- may I say the finding of the
13 paper first?

14 Q. Sure.

15 A. The authors reported that the use of chronic
16 antiglaucoma therapy was a risk factor for failure of
17 glaucoma surgery. And they were able to determine that
18 because there were a group of patients who underwent surgery
19 first without previously undergoing medical glaucoma
20 therapy. That is in fashion, particularly at Moorfields and
21 in Europe.

22 So what the authors report, again, was that the
23 success of surgery was better in the group of patients who
24 had not previously undergone glaucoma therapy.

25 Then, to answer your original question, if I

Tanna - direct

1 may, the authors attribute at least some of that increased
2 failure in the group of patients who underwent therapy to
3 benzoalkonium chloride.

4 Q. If I can turn to page 594 of this article, the column
5 on the right-hand side.

6 Can you briefly summarize what this column
7 states?

8 A. This is part of the discussion. And, briefly, they
9 support further previously published invitro evidence, or
10 laboratory data, that shows the potential mechanism by which
11 this human observation could be explained. One is, one
12 paper refers to the toxicity of benzoalkonium chloride on
13 the cells at the surface of the human eye. And the other
14 reports on the fact that invitro, fibroblasts, which are
15 scar tissue forming cells, proliferate with exposure to
16 benzoalkonium chloride. That is bad for glaucoma surgery
17 because scar tissue is what you don't want when you have
18 glaucoma surgery, at least not excessive scar tissue.

19 Q. Dr. Tanna, have you had the opportunity to review any
20 other articles regarding BAK?

21 A. I have. I have reviewed some of the work by
22 Christophe Baudouin at the University of Paris.

23 Q. If I can guide you to DTX-337, the next tab in this
24 book.

25 A. Yes.

Tanna - direct

1 Q. Can you tell me the title of this article?

2 A. "Effects of Benzoalkonium Chloride on Growth and
3 Survival of Chang Conjunctival Cells."

4 Q. Looking at the bottom of this document, can you tell
5 me when and where it was published?

6 A. It was published in Investigative Ophthalmology and
7 Visual Science in March 1999. And that is a prominent
8 journal.

9 Q. Can you tell me what the purpose of this study was?

10 A. This was an invitro study in cells in tissue culture
11 designed to determine the toxicity of benzoalkonium chloride
12 on those cells.

13 THE COURT: Counsel, do you have an extra copy
14 of 337? It doesn't seem to have made it into my book.

15 MR. SODIKOFF: I apologize, Your Honor. I am
16 sure I do.

17 THE COURT: That's all right.

18 MR. SODIKOFF: I think we just looked at the
19 purpose of the study.

20 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

21 Q. Dr. Tanna, what was the conclusions of the study?

22 A. The results and the conclusions demonstrated that even
23 at very low concentrations of benzoalkonium chloride, as low
24 as 0.0001 percent, there was toxicity, cytotoxicity, cell
25 death, of these conjunctival cells. And conjunctival cells

Tanna - direct

1 is a membrane on the surface of the eye. Conjunctivitis
2 refers to inflammation of that membrane, the membrane that
3 covers the white part of the eye.

4 Q. What was the concentration where these problems were
5 seen?

6 A. Even as low as 0.0001 percent. At very, very low
7 concentrations, benzoalkonium chloride is toxic to these
8 cells.

9 Q. Can you see there what the concentration of BAK is in
10 the original Alphagan formulation?

11 A. It is listed as 0.005 percent weight volume.

12 Q. Turning to DTX-281, the next article that you have,
13 can you tell me what this is?

14 A. This is a paper that was published also in March 1999
15 in the Journal of Ophthalmology, that is an American
16 journal. It is a very big paper that has two major groups
17 of experiments that address the issues of benzoalkonium
18 chloride.

19 Q. Benzoalkonium chloride, just for the rest of us, is
20 BAK. Correct?

21 A. That's correct.

22 Q. And what did the first study find regarding -- I guess
23 what was the test done for the first study?

24 A. Well, I am going to break it down into two, and I will
25 call the first one the human study. What was done in that

Tanna - direct

1 study is patients who were about to undergo glaucoma
2 filtering surgery were enrolled into the study, and they had
3 biopsies performed of their conjunctiva at the time of
4 surgery.

5 What took place was the patients who were
6 enrolled were on either multiple eyedrops for more than one
7 year, on just one eyedrop for more than one year, or on no
8 previous eyedrops.

9 What was found is that there was more
10 inflammation in the conjunctival biopsies in the group of
11 patients who had previously been treated with glaucoma
12 therapy.

13 So there was some evidence at that point to
14 attribute that to benzoalkonium chloride but the patients
15 were also getting the medicinal aspect of the active
16 ingredients of the eyedrops.

17 Q. What was done to determine if it was the BAK or the
18 medicinal component that was causing the problem?

19 A. The separate animal study was done in rats, in which
20 rats were exposed to either just benzoalkonium chloride, a
21 control vehicle excluding the benzoalkonium chloride, or an
22 eyedrop component. I believe it was a beta-blocker, either
23 timolol or carteolol, with benzoalkonium chloride.

24 Q. What was the finding of that second animal study?

25 A. That there was more inflammation in the eyes that

Tanna - direct

1 received either the medication plus benzoalkonium chloride
2 and there was a similar amount in the eyes that received
3 just the benzoalkonium chloride.

4 This isolated the benzoalkonium chloride as at
5 least a component of the proinflammatory effects that was
6 observed in the clinical study.

7 Q. Dr. Tanna, knowing this about BAK -- and all these
8 articles were published before July 1999. Correct?

9 A. Correct.

10 Q. The last three?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. What would you think about a way to improve a
13 medication that included BAK as a preservative?

14 A. One would be motivated to try and switch to a gentler
15 preservative that is less toxic and less inflammatory to the
16 human ocular surface.

17 Q. Now, I believe you said that BAK causes, just
18 generally, let's call them disadvantage in toxicity issues.
19 Is that fair to say?

20 A. Toxicity and inflammatory.

21 Q. Is that a problem in relation to glaucoma patients
22 specifically?

23 A. Yes, in that glaucoma medical therapy is generally
24 considered lifelong or very long duration medical therapy,
25 so there is a lot of chronic exposure to benzoalkonium

Tanna - direct

1 chloride.

2 If somebody has an infection on the surface of
3 the eye, they maybe on an antibiotic for a week or maybe two
4 weeks. If that antibiotic contains benzoalkonium chloride,
5 it is not a big deal for the long-term health of the eye,
6 but given the chronic nature of the glaucoma therapy, I
7 think it is a substantially larger issue.

8 Q. Dr. Tanna, have you heard of the term "dry eye"?

9 A. Yes, I have.

10 Q. What is dry eye?

11 A. Dry eye is a very common medical condition in which
12 patients have symptoms such as burning, a foreign body
13 sensation, sometimes blurry vision that is attributable to a
14 deficiency of, or an abnormality of the natural tear film of
15 the eye ocular surface.

16 Q. How do you treat a patient with dry eye?

17 A. The most common first line of treatment is with
18 replacement artificial tears.

19 Q. Before 1999, what was your preferred artificial tear
20 for the treatment of dry eye?

21 A. Prior to 1999, Refresh Tears was my preferred
22 artificial tear supplement.

23 Q. And were you alone in that preference?

24 A. I think Refresh was extremely popular.

25 Q. Do glaucoma patients sometimes have dry eye?

Tanna - direct

1 A. Yes, they do. Dry eye is a disease that is more
2 common as people get older, and glaucoma is, too. And both
3 of them are relatively common diseases. They are not rare
4 diseases. And, so, both diseases coexist in a substantial
5 proportion of patients with glaucoma.

6 Q. I would like to look at DTX-290, the next tab.

7 Could you tell me what this is, Dr. Tanna?

8 A. This is a relatively recent paper. It was published,
9 I think, in 2007. It was published in the Journal of
10 Glaucoma -- it was published in 2008, from Robert Weinreb's
11 group at UCSD. It shows that there is a very high
12 prevalence of what's called here "ocular surface disease,"
13 which includes dry eye in, in glaucoma patients.

14 Q. When was this article published, just so we are clear?

15 A. 2008.

16 Q. So this is not prior art to the patents at issue. Is
17 that correct?

18 A. That's correct.

19 Q. Is this article consistent with what you saw in your
20 practice before 1999?

21 A. Well, this showed a very high prevalence of 59
22 percent. And I would not have really guessed that it was
23 quite that high. I would have thought more like 30 to 40
24 percent.

25 But it is consistent. We knew that lots of

Tanna - direct

1 patients with glaucoma had dry eye. We knew that those two
2 disease processes coexisted in a large proportion of
3 patients.

4 Q. You referred to "we" there. Who are you referencing?

5 A. I am referring to glaucoma physicians, even
6 ophthalmologists in general, without being glaucoma experts
7 in particular.

8 I think that it was widely known among
9 clinicians that these two diseases coexisted. It was common
10 knowledge.

11 Q. Before 1999, did you personally treat patients who had
12 both glaucoma and dry eye?

13 A. Yes, definitely.

14 Q. How often did that occur?

15 A. I don't know how to quantify it. A lot of my patients
16 who had glaucoma also had dry eye.

17 Q. Did you ever prescribe a patient who had both glaucoma
18 and dry eye Alphagan, the original formulation?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Before 1999, before Alphagan P came out, did you
21 prescribe Alphagan?

22 A. I did, I used it extensively.

23 Q. And did you prescribe to -- I would like to talk about
24 the specific subset of patients that had both dry eye and
25 glaucoma.

Tanna - direct

1 How would you treat that patient?

2 A. So, some of those patients would be on Alphagan, but
3 not all, by any means. And some of those, I would say
4 everybody with dry eye would be receiving Refresh Tears.

5 Some of them would get Refresh Tears, which was
6 the product preserved with Purite. And some of them would
7 be on Refresh Tears of the preservative-free variety or
8 maybe some other brand of artificial tears that was
9 preservative-free.

10 Refresh was the only brand that was preserved,
11 the only brand of artificial tears that was preserved that I
12 recall recommending to patients prior to July, 1999, but
13 there were several that were preservative-free that I used.

14 Q. Before 1999, you were prescribing Alphagan, the
15 original formulation, and Refresh Tears to the same patient.
16 Is that correct?

17 A. To many patients, I recommended use of both of those
18 medications. Correct.

19 Q. Can you describe what you saw as the result of that
20 treatment?

21 A. I didn't see any problems attributable to Refresh
22 Tears, attributable to using both of those in the same
23 patient.

24 Q. Did any of your patients somehow suffer from glass
25 shard-like cutting of their eye when you treated -- when you

Tanna - direct

1 prescribed both Refresh Tears and Alphagan?

2 A. No, I don't remember that. The only patient who told
3 me that an eyedrop felt like glass in the eye was a
4 different medication. It was one patient who did report
5 that. I remember very clearly, it was a different
6 medication.

7 Q. If we can go back to JTX-100, just on the board for a
8 second.

9 Dr. Tanna, are you -- looking at this vehicle
10 again for the original Alphagan prior art formulation, can
11 you tell me what it states as the tonicity agent?

12 A. The tonicity agent is listed as sodium chloride.

13 Q. What is a tonicity agent?

14 A. Tonicity, osmolality, and osmolarity are all related.
15 They basically give you an idea of the concentration of salt
16 in the solution. And tonicity is important because it
17 regulates the flow of water into and out of cells.

18 Q. Sodium chloride, is that basically table salt?

19 A. Sodium chloride is table salt.

20 Q. Now, in the Alphagan formulation, only sodium chloride
21 is listed as a tonicity agent and there are no electrolytes.
22 Is that correct?

23 A. Correct. Some would say that sodium chloride is
24 itself an electrolyte.

25 Q. There is no other electrolytes besides sodium

Tanna - direct

1 chloride?

2 A. That's correct.

3 Q. Was there literature out -- let me take that back.

4 As a practicing clinician before 1999, were
5 there certain other electrolytes that you would have liked
6 to have seen in a vehicle?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. I would like to turn to DTX-279. Could you tell me
9 what this article is, Dr. Tanna?

10 A. This is a 1985 paper called Essential Ions for
11 Maintenance of the Corneal Epithelial Surface by Bachman and
12 Wilson.

13 Q. The corneal epithelial surface, that is basically the
14 eye?

15 A. The surface of the eye. The corneal surface, the
16 cornea is the front clear part of the eye. There are other
17 components to the ocular surface as well.

18 Q. If we can look at the abstract here with the sentence
19 that starts, "It was shown," can you tell me what that
20 states, about five lines down?

21 A. It says, "It was shown that the epithelial surface was
22 maintained best with a buffered solution containing
23 potassium, calcium, magnesium, phosphate, and bicarbonate,
24 in addition to sodium chloride."

25 Q. The potassium, calcium, magnesium, are those what we

Tanna - direct

1 have been calling electrolytes or tonicity agents?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. What year was this article published?

4 A. 1985.

5 Q. That is seen on, I believe, Page 3 at the top.

6 Going back to Page 2 of this article and looking
7 at the first column, at the top, the first paragraph, do you
8 see where it says, "A basic tear solution"?

9 A. Yes, I do.

10 Q. What did the authors here include in their basic tear
11 solution? It might be easier to look at Table 1 for this
12 part.

13 Do you understand "BTS" is a basic tear solution
14 as these authors call it?

15 A. I do understand that, yes.

16 Q. What does this solution contain?

17 A. The basic tear solution contains sodium chloride,
18 potassium chloride, calcium chloride, that .2 H-20 means
19 dihydrate, magnesium chloride, hexahydrate, sodium
20 carbonate, and sodium phosphate.

21 Q. Going back to the full page, on the left-hand side,
22 the second paragraph, can you tell me what the os -- what is
23 osmolarity?

24 A. Along with tonicity and osmolarity, they are all
25 related terms with simple differences in terms of the

Tanna - direct

1 precise detail of how you calculate it that basically give
2 you the concentration of salts in the solution.

3 That is a simplification of it as it applies to
4 eyedrops that we are talking about.

5 Q. Here it reports that the osmolarity was 305. Is there
6 a significance to that specific number?

7 A. Yes. It is very close to the osmolarity of the normal
8 human tears.

9 Q. Was that known before 1999?

10 A. Yes, it was.

11 Q. Why would you want to have the osmolarity, or
12 tonicity, close to that of the human tears?

13 A. Because if you were far away from that of the normal
14 human tear film, it would be painful. It would burn or
15 sting. That's because it would either drive water out of
16 the cells, of the surface of the eye, or force water in,
17 depending on which direction it was off.

18 Q. The next line here says that the pH of the buffered
19 solutions was adjusted to 7.5.

20 First of all, does this suggest that the
21 solutions that they were talking about were buffered?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. And what is the significance of a pH of 7.5?

24 A. 7.5 is close to the pH of the human tears.

25 Q. Going to the next page, at the top again, what year

Tanna - direct

1 was this paper published?

2 A. 1985.

3 Q. So this was all known, in addition to before 1999, it
4 was also known as of 1985. Is that accurate?

5 A. That's accurate.

6 Q. I would like to move to the discussion section of
7 this. Why don't you tell me first, what did the authors,
8 what did they do here? What was the basis of this report?

9 A. They, they looked at the corneal surface with these
10 different solutions and then looked at light scatter to get
11 an idea of the impact of these different solutions on the
12 surface of the eye.

13 Q. Let's go to the "Discussion" section on Page 1487, the
14 bottom right.

15 A. To be complete, I should say, this was in rabbits. It
16 was done in rabbits.

17 Q. Are rabbits, to your knowledge, a normal model for use
18 for looking at eye medications?

19 A. It's commonly used, an excellent model for that
20 purpose.

21 Q. Looking at the bottom right-hand side, potassium has a
22 high concentration in tears. Does that suggest that was
23 known in 1985?

24 A. Yes, it does.

25 Q. What do the authors conclude about the use of potassium

Tanna - direct

1 in an artificial tear solution?

2 A. They conclude that potassium should be included in an
3 artificial tear solution because it was the most important
4 factor, it seemed, in this particular study with respect to
5 maintaining stability of the ocular surface.

6 Q. And looking at the top of Page 1488, the next page of
7 this document, the very top, the first sentence of the
8 paper, does that accurately reflect the authors' conclusion
9 regarding the use of potassium in an artificial tear
10 solution?

11 A. Well, that fragment, I am not sure, can accurately
12 reflect anything.

13 Q. Can you show me 1487 and 1488, split screen.

14 On the bottom of 1487, you can see that the "it"
15 is referring to potassium. Is that accurate?

16 A. That's what the authorize is talking about here, yes.

17 Q. So the authors conclude and teach us that potassium
18 should be included in tear substitutes.

19 Is that an accurate conclusion?

20 A. That is their advice based on the results on their,
21 their findings and based on previous publications.

22 Q. Looking at the, if we can go now and focus on Page
23 1488, the next paragraph, if you can highlight that, do the
24 authors reach any conclusions about the presence of calcium
25 and magnesium electrolytes in artificial tear solutions?

Tanna - direct

1 A. It is their opinion, and they state it right here,
2 that there is a strong suggestion that calcium, magnesium,
3 bicarbonate, and phosphate should also be included.

4 Q. Do you disagree with their conclusions?

5 A. Not at all.

6 Q. Do you agree with them?

7 A. I do.

8 Q. So, Dr. Tanna, I believe you said earlier that you
9 treat patients who have dry eye. I guess I just have a
10 hypothetical question for you. If you were to -- if you had
11 two artificial tear solutions in front of you, one included
12 only an ACL, sodium chloride, and the other one included
13 sodium chloride, potassium chloride, calcium, and magnesium,
14 which would you prefer?

15 A. One would prefer the more complex electrolyte
16 composition that you have described.

17 Q. Why is that?

18 A. Because of the beneficial effects of those
19 electrolytes on the ocular surface. It's been previously
20 demonstrated. And because it more closely mimics the
21 natural tear film.

22 Q. Was all that known before 1999?

23 A. Yes, it was.

24 Q. I would like to turn to DTX- -- actually, we are going
25 to skip DTX-336.

Tanna - direct

1 Let's move on to DTX-297. Dr. Tanna, did you
2 have an opportunity to review this document in preparing for
3 your testimony today?

4 A. I did.

5 Q. And what is this document?

6 A. This was an invitro study that looked at the effect of
7 different viscosity building agents on the stability of
8 cells in culture. So it was a cytotoxicity study of a
9 corneal cell line.

10 Q. When was this paper published?

11 A. This was published in 1998, I believe.

12 Yes, 1998.

13 Q. So far, except for the one paper that talked about the
14 prevalence of dry eye patients also having glaucoma, have
15 all the articles we have been discussing been published
16 before 1999?

17 A. All of them before July 1999. We had a couple
18 published in March 1999.

19 Q. Thank you for being precise.

20 What does this paper tell us about -- what was
21 the purpose of this paper?

22 A. It was to compare these two viscosity building agents,
23 the carbomers versus the cellulose-based viscosity building
24 agents, of which carboxymethylcellulose is one, in terms of
25 toxicity on cells in culture.

Tanna - direct

1 Q. What is the conclusion of this paper?

2 A. The conclusion is that the carbomer-based molecules
3 are cytotoxic and that the carboxymethylcellulose ones were
4 much less toxic.

5 Q. Dr. Tanna, just to be clear, when you read these
6 articles, do you feel like you are qualified to understand
7 and interpret what they are teaching us?

8 A. Yes, I do.

9 Q. Thank you.

10 I would like to turn to Page 439 of this
11 document. These don't have Bates numbers, but 439, and the
12 beginning of the last full paragraph on the left-hand side
13 that starts with "Several studies," did you consider this
14 paragraph in forming your opinions for this case?

15 A. I did.

16 Q. What does this paragraph teach us?

17 A. It states that several studies have shown the
18 advantages of anionic polymers, such as CMC, which is
19 carboxymethylcellulose, that are more bioadhesive than
20 neutral polymers.

21 Q. What does "bioadhesive" mean?

22 A. Well, it refers to this concept that -- and it is
23 particular important for artificial tears, that the longer
24 the retention time on the surface of the eye, the more
25 effective the therapy, because, with dry eye, you are

Tanna - direct

1 chronically trying to keep the surface of the eye as moist
2 as possible. So, if you have simply water in a salt
3 solution, it's going to wet the surface of the eye and then
4 the eye is immediately going to dry off.

5 So, especially as it pertains to artificial tear
6 therapy, you want material that is going to hang onto the
7 surface of the eye. The surface of the eye is very complex.
8 And, so, there are opportunities to use molecules like
9 carboxymethylcellulose that will hang on effectively longer.

10 Q. This hanging on or bio adhesion of
11 carboxymethylcellulose, would it also be relevant to
12 patients who are suffering from both glaucoma and dry eye?

13 A. It would be relevant for glaucoma in that, by
14 prolonging the duration of time that a medication solution
15 can, if you will, hang onto the surface of the eye, you
16 increase the likelihood that a molecule will be able to
17 cross into the eye.

18 Q. If we can go back to JTX-100. If we can just look at
19 the Alphagan original formulation. This is the prior art
20 Alphagan formulation, Dr. Tanna. And after looking at
21 everything we have looked at, what is your opinion regarding
22 the use of BAK and whether there are any motivations that
23 you see in relation to that use?

24 A. Well, given the publications that we looked at, and
25 there are still others we didn't look at, prior to July,

Tanna - direct

1 1999, there is evidence in the literature of the toxicity
2 and proinflammatory effects of benzoalkonium chloride. So I
3 believe one would be motivated to try and reformulate as
4 many eyedrops as possible with gentler, milder
5 preservatives, like Purite.

6 Q. And you were actually using Purite in the form of
7 Refresh Tears to treat a significant subset of your patient
8 population. Is that correct?

9 A. That is correct. I was not really, per se, using
10 Purite. I was using the entire artificial tear formulation,
11 which it happened to be preserved with, you are right.

12 Q. Dr. Tanna, it's Apotex position that one of skill in
13 the art would be motivated to combine the original Alphagan
14 with the vehicle of Refresh Tears.

15 Is there anything that would dissuade one of
16 skill in the art from trying that combination?

17 A. No.

18 Q. If I could guide you to DTX-011. Can you tell me what
19 this is, from the front page?

20 A. It is called, Development Pharmaceuticals Report for
21 Brimonidine-Purite Ophthalmic Solution, Issued June 22,
22 2000, Volume 1 of 4.

23 Q. If we could turn --

24 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, this is an
25 abbreviated form of this exhibit. It is not the whole

Tanna - direct

1 thing. I believe it's like the first 15 or 16 pages. It
2 extends through AGN 0059806. We definitely cut off a lot of
3 it, because it was very thick.

4 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

5 Q. If I can guide you to AGN 59801. The second sentence
6 under the composition and the formulation development, can
7 you read to me what Allergan told the FDA its reason for
8 using Refresh Tears was?

9 A. The highlighted portion says, "As a consequence,
10 formulation studies targeted incorporating brimonidine
11 tartrate at 0.1 percent, 0.15 percent, and 0.2 percent
12 weight to volume, using Refresh Tears vehicle as a
13 platform."

14 I am not sure I answered your question.

15 Q. I guess when Allergan was talking to the FDA to try to
16 get approval of its drug, it said that Refresh Tears was the
17 vehicle for brimonidine. Isn't that what this says? This
18 was eventually sent to the, I believe there is similar
19 language in their NDA.

20 I will take that question back, Your Honor.

21 Q. The next sentence there, "Refresh Tears is an
22 over-the-counter lubricant eyedrop with sodium
23 carboxymethylcellulose as an ophthalmic demulcent and the
24 non-irritating preservative Purite."

25 Is that consistent with your opinion of Refresh

Tanna - direct

1 Tears before 1999?

2 A. Yes, it is.

3 Q. And going to the next paragraph, at least by the date
4 of this article, which is June 22nd, 2000, before the filing
5 dates of the four latter patents, can you tell me what
6 concentration of brimonidine tartrate Allergan had chosen to
7 pursue FDA approval of?

8 A. This states, "The finished product contains
9 brimonidine tartrate at 0.15 percent weight to volume."

10 Q. Dr. Tanna, I think you have been here for a lot of the
11 week. The .15 percent concentration, and I think it was
12 actually reflected in the exhibit we had up yesterday that
13 was hard to see, was chosen well before the summer of 2000.

14 Does that sound accurate?

15 A. Yes, it does.

16 Q. Do you have an opinion as to whether the Allergan
17 inventors properly disclosed the best mode of their
18 invention for their patents?

19 A. I do --

20 MS. BROOKS: Your Honor, I am going to object at
21 this point.

22 THE COURT: Sustained.

23 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

24 Q. If we can go back to JTX-100. Dr. Tanna, in the
25 original formulation of Alphagan, the concentration of the

Tanna - direct

1 brimonidine tartrate, the active ingredient, was.2 percent.

2 Is that correct?

3 A. That is correct.

4 Q. Do you have an opinion as to whether one would be
5 motivated to try to lower that concentration?

6 A. Yes, I do. With the data available in the literature
7 prior to July, 1999, there was substantial evidence that
8 brimonidine was similarly effective at lower concentrations,
9 at least at some time points when the measurements were done
10 in clinical trials.

11 We also know, from previously published studies,
12 that the incidence of adverse events and the severity of
13 adverse events was dose-related.

14 So, given those two facts, I believe that one
15 would have been motivated to try to reduce the concentration
16 of brimonidine, the active ingredient, in a new formulation
17 of Alphagan, or brimonidine, that would result, one would
18 expect, in a reduction in adverse events and possibly no
19 reduction in efficacy.

20 Q. If we could turn, Dr. Tanna, to DTX-63. Can you tell
21 me what this is, Dr. Tanna?

22 A. This is the front cover -- not the front cover, but
23 the inner page, inner front page of a multi-volume textbook
24 called The Glaucomas. I believe it was published in '96,
25 but I am uncertain about that.

Tanna - direct

1 Q. I think this version is actually missing the copyright
2 date.

3 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, would you mind if we
4 supplemented the record after this trial with the copyright
5 date of this?

6 THE COURT: Is there any objection, Ms. Brooks?

7 MS. BROOKS: No objection, Your Honor.

8 MR. SODIKOFF: Just to keep the record clear.

9 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

10 Q. If we can turn to Page 1441 of this document, AGN
11 5388 -- let's go to 5387 first.

12 A. That page number is what.

13 Q. It's 11440 of the journal.

14 A. It's a textbook, by the way.

15 Q. I apologize. Are textbooks usually on the Vanguard of
16 what's known in the art? Do they usually lag behind
17 journals?

18 A. Big-time lag with textbooks.

19 Q. So if this was published in '96, would you have an
20 opinion as to whether this was known well before that time?

21 A. Yes. I think that the information that's in this
22 chapter would have been known well before '96, if '96 is the
23 correct date. But again, I don't recall for sure the
24 publication date.

25 Q. We will assume it is before 1999 for today.

Tanna - direct

1 In the top right, it mentions brimonidine. Is
2 that the brimonidine tartrate that we have been talking
3 about?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. It's relatively selective alpha-2-agonists?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. It has a structure similar to Clonidine?

8 A. Correct.

9 Q. It is also known to be a lipophilic drug?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. If we can look at the next page of this document, I
12 would like to look at the adverse events description for
13 brimonidine. The first paragraph. Can you tell me what
14 this paragraph reports about the adverse events for
15 brimonidine tartrate?

16 A. Shall I read it?

17 Q. You can summarize it for us.

18 A. It basically says that these common side effects that
19 occur with brimonidine, dry mouth, conjunctival blanching,
20 which is just a constriction, and, therefore, whitening of
21 the conjunctiva, and drowsiness, that they appear to be
22 dose-related. Meaning, the higher the concentration, the
23 higher the likelihood of the particular side effect being
24 mentioned.

25 Q. Is the flip-side of that true for dose-related, that

Tanna - direct

1 if you lower the concentration, you would expect to have
2 less side effects?

3 A. Yes, that's what that means.

4 Q. I would like to look at DTX-111, please. Can you tell
5 me what this article is?

6 A. Yes. This is a paper published, the lead author is
7 Robert Derick, it is published in the Journal of
8 Ophthalmology in 1997. It is called, "Brimonidine Tartrate,
9 a One-Month Dose Response Study."

10 By the way, since it was published in 1997, and
11 since, I believe, the previous chapter refers to it, I doubt
12 that the previous chapter was published as early as '96, now
13 that I am reminded of this. And I just don't remember what
14 year the book was published.

15 Q. But this article was definitely published before 1999?

16 A. Definitely, yes.

17 Q. Looking at the bottom left of the article, if you can
18 blow that section up, the second-to-last line, can you tell
19 us who supported this article?

20 A. Supported in part by a grant from the Anvyl Krieger
21 Foundation and Allergan, Inc.

22 Q. That is the plaintiff here?

23 A. Correct.

24 Q. Can you tell me what the authors found on this article
25 relating to safety?

Tanna - direct

1 A. The authors found that there was a fairly high
2 incidence of side effects related to the use of brimonidine.
3 Maybe I should say that, in this study, there were three
4 different concentrations of brimonidine that were tested.

5 Q. So this study was testing to see whether there would
6 be a different amount of side effects for different
7 concentrations of brimonidine?

8 A. Not just side effects. They were also looking at the
9 effectiveness in terms of pressure reduction.

10 Q. But it includes the side effects. What were the three
11 concentrations of brimonidine that were chosen?

12 A. In increasing order, 0.08 percent, 0.2 percent, and
13 0.5 percent.

14 Q. And the Alphagan marketed product, which one of those
15 three is it?

16 A. The middle one, 0.2 percent.

17 Q. So this also tested a concentration less than what was
18 marketed as Alphagan. Is that accurate?

19 A. It did, 0.08 percent was a lower concentration, right.

20 Q. That is actually a lower concentration than Alphagan P
21 that is on the market. Is that accurate?

22 A. That is accurate. Alphagan P is available at 0.1
23 percent or 0.15 percent.

24 Q. And this is 0.08 percent?

25 A. Correct.

Tanna - direct

1 Q. If I can turn you to Page 134 of this article, the
2 paragraph on the left, can you tell me what this describes?

3 A. It says, Conjunctival blanching appeared to be
4 dose-related. It was observed bilaterally in eight patients
5 in both the 0.2 and 0.5 percent treatment groups.

6 Q. How much in the .08 group?

7 A. Five patients in the .08 group.

8 Q. So it was less than in the .08 than in the .2 or the
9 .5?

10 A. Correct.

11 Q. What is conjunctival blanching? Is that an adverse
12 effect?

13 A. Some would consider it a favorable effect in some
14 ways, because what happens initially, with brimonidine, is
15 there is a constriction of blood vessels. But in reality,
16 that initial constriction leads to a later dilation of blood
17 vessels. There is this rebound dilation. So the blanching
18 is the whitening aspect that occurs immediately after
19 dosing. And then, later, there is, the eye is red, there is
20 conjunctival hypererythema.

21 Q. If we can look at the next sentence, conjunctival --

22 A. Conjunctival erythema. That is redness.

23 Q. This is causing red eye. Can you tell us what the
24 authors report in this Allergan-supported study about the
25 adverse events of red eye in different concentrations?

Tanna - direct

1 A. It says it occurred more commonly with higher
2 concentrations of brimonidine than with the lower
3 concentration, occurring in eight of 48 patients in the 0.5
4 percent group, six of 48 patients in the 0.2 percent group,
5 and only two of 45 patients in the 0.08 percent group.

6 Q. So there is one-third, or 66 percent less patients in
7 the .08 group who suffer this adverse event compared to the
8 .2 percent?

9 A. That's correct.

10 Q. If we can go back to the big part of this page and
11 look at the last paragraph before the discussion. This
12 paragraph mentions burning and stinging. That seems to be a
13 be problem.

14 Can you describe what this reports about that?

15 A. It also reports this dose response effect in which the
16 side effect is more common at the 0.5 percent dose than at
17 the 0.2 or 0.08 percent dose.

18 Q. Looking at the last sentence of this paragraph, it
19 discusses dry mouth and fatigue-drowsiness. What is dry
20 mouth?

21 A. The technical term is xerostomia, and it is a side
22 effect that is associated with the use of the
23 alpha-2-adrenergic agonists, including brimonidine.

24 Q. What, if anything, does dry mouth give you a picture
25 of relating to the global or systemic adverse events

Tanna - direct

1 relating to brimonidine?

2 A. I actually think of dry mouth as being somewhat of a
3 local adverse event because the normal pathway for tears to
4 flow away from the eye, including medications that you would
5 add to the tear film, is through a drainage pathway in the
6 eyelids, into the nose, and then into the mouth.

7 So when this medication comes into contact with
8 alpha-2 receptors in the mouth, that leads to oral dryness.

9 Q. So, can you tell us what this article reports about
10 the incidence of dry mouth?

11 A. It is also, it follows a dose response pattern in
12 which it's less common at the lower concentrations and much
13 more common at the highest concentration, the 0.5 percent
14 concentration.

15 Q. So it's 13.3 percent in the .08 and 16.7 in the .2.
16 Is that accurate?

17 A. Correct. And 35.4 in the .5 concentration.

18 Q. And how about fatigue-drowsiness?

19 A. That I think of as being a systemic adverse event
20 because the drug actually has to get into the bloodstream in
21 order to cause fatigue and drowsiness. It actually has to
22 cross the blood brain barrier and affect the central nervous
23 system directly.

24 Q. Were you here when Dr. Whitcup was talking about the
25 problem of fatigue and how brimonidine shouldn't impact how

Tanna - direct

1 you are able to drive your car or operate machinery?

2 A. I did not hear that part of his testimony. I think I
3 heard just the tail maybe hour of his testimony, if I
4 remember correctly.

5 Q. Is this a serious side effect, fatigue-drowsiness?

6 A. It can be. There is a warning on the bottle not to
7 use heavy machinery and that sort of thing.

8 Q. What was the incidence of fatigue-drowsiness as you go
9 up the dose curve from .08 to .2 to .5?

10 A. There is a clear dose response effect in which it
11 increases with increase in concentration from 6.7 to 10.4 to
12 29.2 percent.

13 Q. So looking just at the safety of brimonidine tartrate,
14 just the safety aspect, which is better, the .2, the -- the
15 .08, the .2 or the .5?

16 A. Well, because the lower the concentration of
17 brimonidine, the lower the incidence of side effects,
18 regarding just side effects, the 0.08 percent group did the
19 best.

20 Q. And as a doctor, are you always trying to lower the
21 incidence of side effects?

22 A. Yes. That's one goal in therapy.

23 Q. Now, I think you mentioned that this article also
24 looked at the efficacy of these different concentrations.
25 Is that correct?

Tanna - direct

1 A. Yes, that's correct.

2 Q. Again, this article was published in 1996 or '97, well
3 before the filing dates of the four latter patents. Is that
4 correct?

5 A. That is correct.

6 Q. I would like to guide you to Page 132, the "Results"
7 section, and the last sentence there, can you tell me what
8 that says?

9 A. "All concentrations of brimonidine significantly
10 reduced IOP," intraocular pressure, that is, "from baseline
11 at all followup visits."

12 Q. Does this basically mean -- when it says "all
13 concentrations," what is that referring to?

14 A. It is referring to 0.08 percent, the 0.2 percent, and
15 the 0.5 percent concentrations of brimonidine.

16 Q. And this is on the bottom of Page 132?

17 A. That's correct, bottom right.

18 Q. If I could do a split screen with this page here, and
19 then JTX-003, the first claim. Claim 1. If you could blow
20 up the last sentence that we looked at.

21 So in 1997, Allergan reports, or in this
22 Allergan-sponsored study, Derick, et al., report that all
23 concentrations which includes the .08 of brimonidine
24 significantly reduced IOP from baseline. Is that accurate?

25 A. That is accurate.

Tanna - direct

1 Q. And then in 1999, a couple years later, they claim a
2 therapeutically effective aqueous composition. Is that
3 right?

4 A. That's Claim 1.

5 Q. Let's go back to just the Derick article. DTX-111.

6 If we could look at Page 133, the next page,
7 Table 2. Dr. Tanna, what is Table 2?

8 A. Table 2 describes the intraocular pressure at various
9 followup visits. Again, it's the mean, it's the average of
10 all the patients who are in the study, at various followup
11 visits that occurred during the treatment period. That is
12 the first day after initiation of therapy, day 7, day 14,
13 day 21, and day 28, which is as far as they went, and it
14 reports it separately for each of the different
15 concentrations of brimonidine tested. And it reports it as
16 a percent reduction from baseline in the intraocular
17 pressure.

18 I should point out, by the way, that this is
19 what we call the trough pressure. It's just before the next
20 dose is to be administered.

21 Q. Is the trough pressure an important measure in
22 glaucoma medications?

23 A. I believe it is, yes.

24 Q. This chart reports five different days of visit. It
25 provides information for them. Which one to you is the most

Tanna - direct

1 important of those five numbers?

2 A. So, the vast majority of patients for whom I prescribe
3 brimonidine, I am prescribing it for chronic, long-term use.
4 In light of that, the most important, to me, is day 28,
5 because that's the longest duration information that we
6 have, at least from this particular paper.

7 Q. You sometimes prescribe glaucoma medication for years.
8 Is that correct?

9 A. That's correct.

10 Q. What is the Derick article in 1997 reporting about the
11 effectiveness of .08 compared to .2 percent?

12 A. It reports that there is a 13.2 percent reduction from
13 baseline at the morning hour, the 8:00 a.m. pressure, just
14 prior to installation of the next dose, again, 13.2 percent
15 reduction in the .08 group, and a 15.5 percent reduction in
16 the .2 group, and then it goes on to report also, I think
17 it's important, 13.8 percent in the .5 percent group.

18 Q. The .08 -- it's not quite as good as the .2, is it?

19 A. It's not quite as good. But it's indistinguishable,
20 certainly, from the .5. And whether there is a
21 statistically significant difference at this time point,
22 between the .08 and the .2 group, I am fairly certain that
23 the paper specifically says that there were no significant
24 differences at this time point.

25 Q. Now, Allergan is arguing that their inventions are

Tanna - direct

1 good because it allows the formulation at an effective
2 amount for .15 percent. They brought the concentration from
3 .2 percent to .15. Can you do a little circle where the .15
4 would be here, theoretically, if it existed?

5 A. It does not exist. But if it did -- well, it didn't
6 go exactly where I put it.

7 I will try it again. It's in there.

8 (Indicating.)

9 Q. So somewhere in there. Would the .15 have been
10 effective as the .2 percent?

11 A. We have no way of knowing from this study.

12 Q. Did Allergan ever test, to your knowledge, .15 percent
13 in the original Alphagan formulation to see if they could
14 have just reduced the concentration without any of these
15 other changes?

16 A. Of all the documents I have seen, of all the papers I
17 have seen published and so on, I have never seen the
18 original formulation at 0.15 percent tested in humans.

19 Q. Allergan has argued that the allergy of brimonidine,
20 that they find with Alphagan, is associated with the
21 concentration of brimonidine.

22 Would a reduction to a .15 percent in the
23 original Alphagan vehicle potentially have given you a
24 reduction in allergy?

25 A. Yes. There is every reason to believe that based on

Tanna - direct

1 this paper and other prior art publications.

2 Q. And in this paper, it's because it's a dose-related,
3 they find that adverse events are dose-related. Is that
4 fair to say?

5 A. That's correct.

6 Q. So you would expect that if it was a .15 percent, that
7 it would have less allergy?

8 A. I would expect that to be the case.

9 Q. And based on this report, it could have comparable
10 efficacy at a .2 percent, but we just don't know?

11 A. There is every reason to believe that possibility
12 given how effective even the .08 percent was at this time
13 point.

14 Q. But Allergan never reformulated with a .15 percent.
15 Is that accurate?

16 A. Not --

17 Q. .15 in the original Alphagan?

18 A. That's correct.

19 Q. And they never had a patent, it wouldn't behoove them
20 because they didn't have patent protection for the .15
21 percent?

22 A. Correct.

23 MS. BROOKS: I object.

24 THE COURT: That is sustained.

25 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

Tanna - direct

1 Q. If we could go back to JTX-100.

2 THE COURT: Counsel, about how much more do you
3 have?

4 MR. SODIKOFF: I probably have about 15 minutes.

5 THE COURT: Let's take our morning break.

6 (Recess taken.)

7 THE COURT: Please take your seats. Let's
8 continue.

9 MR. SODIKOFF: Thank you, Your Honor.

10 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

11 Q. Dr. Tanna, I think we wrapped up on what was known
12 before 1999. Now I would like to turn to some of the
13 clinical testing between the prior art Alphagan and the
14 Alphagan P .15 formulation?

15 Are you familiar with the Katz article?

16 A. Yes, I am.

17 Q. If we can look at DTX-170.

18 What is the Katz article?

19 A. This was an article published in 2002 in the Journal
20 of Glaucoma, which described the results of two major
21 clinical trials that were conducted in parallel. Allergan's
22 documents refer to them in 007 and 008, that looked at the
23 pressure lowering effects and the safety of three different
24 formulations of brimonidine.

25 Those were the 0.2 percent brimonidine original

Tanna - direct

1 formulation, then there were two preserved with Purite, with
2 Refresh Tears, and those were the 0.15 percent brimonidine
3 and the 0.2 percent brimonidine, with Refresh.

4 Q. I would like to focus on a comparison between the
5 prior art Alphagan .2 percent and the Alphagan .15 percent
6 peak, if that's okay?

7 A. Could you repeat that?

8 Q. Comparing the old formulation to the .15 peak?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. If we look at Page 122 of Katz. This is in the middle
11 talking about the efficacy of two drugs. Is that correct?

12 A. Correct.

13 Q. What does this relate about the efficacy of the prior
14 art .2 percent with no Purite and the .15 percent
15 brimonidine-Purite, which is the Alphagan P?

16 A. In a nutshell, that there were few statistically
17 significant differences. It actually says there were no
18 statistical significant differences in mean IOP. But at
19 certain time points, there were differences favored the
20 original formulation brimonidine 0.2 percent.

21 Q. Going back to your first statement, just to be really
22 clear, what is it, after the comma in that sentence, what
23 does that say?

24 A. It says, Except at the 5:00 p.m. time points at month
25 three, and then it gives a "P" value which is less than 0.05

Tanna - direct

1 which means it is statistically significant, that the
2 difference was statistically significant.

3 Q. So there was one difference in an IOP measurement
4 between the brimonidine-Purite .15 percent and the
5 brimonidine .2 percent?

6 A. That, in mean diameter IOP, which means the average of
7 daytime pressure measurements that were taken.

8 There were even more differences than that, if
9 you parse it down more finely.

10 Q. Can you explain that to me?

11 A. Yes. For example, I think I have it right here, it
12 says, There were no statistically significant differences in
13 the mean changes from baseline and dianol IOP measurements
14 except for the 10:00 a.m. time point at week two, the 5:00
15 p.m. time point at month three, and the 5:00 p.m. time point
16 at month six. All of those were statistically different.
17 If I recall correctly, they all favored the higher
18 concentration original formulation.

19 Q. Looking, again, at the first sentence, it says that,
20 "Where there was a difference, it was in favor of the old
21 formulation." Is that correct?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. In this sentence, where it reports differences in
24 efficacy, each time, while not statistically significant,
25 they were in favor of the old brimonidine as well?

Tanna - direct

1 A. You mean the second half that I just read?

2 Q. Yeah.

3 A. It actually states that some of those differences were
4 statistically significant.

5 Q. And those, all the differences, where there are
6 differences, favor the old formulation of brimonidine?

7 A. That's my recollection. But let me make certain.

8 Q. Looking -- if we can do a split screen between 122 and
9 123.

10 A. Yes, that is correct. Whenever there was a difference
11 in pressure lowering, the difference seemed to favor
12 brimonidine 0.2 percent in the original formulation. But
13 there were few differences.

14 Q. Is that reflected where it says respectively favoring
15 brimonidine .2 percent?

16 A. Correct.

17 Q. What was your overall opinion regarding the efficacy
18 of the old formulation brimonidine .2 percent, the Alphagan,
19 the prior art formulation, and the current Alphagan .15 P?

20 A. In terms of efficacy?

21 Q. Yes.

22 A. I agree with the statement that's on the screen right
23 now that says that there is comparable efficacy.

24 Q. Let's look -- would you expect there to be comparable
25 efficacy in light of what we saw in the Derick article, that

Tanna - direct

1 the .08 percent provided therapeutic benefits?

2 A. Yes. There is a difference here. The formulation is
3 different. This is brimonidine and Refresh Tears, whereas,
4 that .08 that we were looking at before was brimonidine .08
5 percent in the original formulation. But given what we saw
6 in Derick, I would not at all be surprised and I would
7 actually expect this result, that there would be similar
8 efficacy.

9 Q. And the reason you can't draw a conclusion, a firm
10 conclusion, is because there is two variables that have been
11 switched. Is that right?

12 A. That's right. That's exactly right.

13 Q. So, between Derick in here, the concentration in
14 Derick was .08, and here, the Alphagan P is .15, but also
15 the vehicle switched from the Derick article, where it was
16 the prior art vehicle, and now it's this Purite vehicle.
17 Correct?

18 A. That's correct.

19 Q. And you don't know where the efficacy similarity stems
20 from, the difference in the concentration, or the difference
21 in the vehicle?

22 A. That's exactly right. You can't tell for certain.

23 Q. Let's look at the safety of the Alphagan .2 percent to
24 the Alphagan Purite referred here as brimonidine-Purite .15
25 percent.

Tanna - direct

1 What would you expect regarding the safety just
2 for the change in concentration?

3 A. Well, they use the term "safety" here. First of all,
4 I probably would take issue with the term "safety." I did a
5 peer-review for a journal article recently where the term
6 "safety review" for side effects were relatively mild. So I
7 probably would prefer tolerability here but it is a minor
8 point.

9 Could you repeat your question, now that I have
10 confused myself?

11 Q. Sure.

12 (Pending question read.)

13 A. What would I expect?

14 I would expect --

15 Q. Let me just clear up that question. I don't know if
16 it came out quite right.

17 The original Alphagan was at .2 percent.

18 Correct?

19 A. That's correct.

20 Q. It's compared here -- that's the wrong page.

21 It's compared in this article, you compare the
22 old brimonidine .2 percent to the Alphagan P .15 percent.

23 Correct?

24 A. That's correct.

25 Q. And that lowers the concentration by .05 percent?

Tanna - direct

1 A. That's correct.

2 Q. What would you expect from lowering the concentration
3 .05 percent for the brimonidine?

4 A. It's a general principle of pharmacology that the
5 lower the concentration of a drug that you use, the lower
6 the anticipated, the lower the severity and incidence of
7 anticipated side effects. And that's supported for this
8 particular drug by the Derick article, which showed this
9 dose response relationship with adverse events.

10 Q. So Derick showed that the general principle of
11 reducing concentration gets reduced side effects applies to
12 brimonidine tartrate?

13 A. Exactly right.

14 Q. If we can look at Page 124, under "Quality of Life."
15 Actually, if we can go to the first page of this article,
16 just for one second.

17 On the bottom left, it states here that this
18 article was supported by Allergan. Is that correct?

19 A. That is correct.

20 Q. And they are the plaintiff here?

21 A. They are the plaintiff.

22 Q. Do you have knowledge of whether -- strike that.

23 If we can go to Page 124, under "Quality of
24 Life," what does the first sentence here say?

25 A. It says, "There were no statistical differences in the

Tanna - direct

1 investigator's response to the clinical success of the
2 medications."

3 Q. And the investigator's response, who is the
4 investigator?

5 A. At each of the sites, there is really two multi-center
6 studies pooled together, at each of the numerous sites,
7 there are clinician investigators. Those are the people who
8 are actually doing the evaluation of the patients, filling
9 out data forms, sending information back through clerical
10 assistants, information back to the sponsor, in this case,
11 Allergan.

12 Q. Is this response, does it reflect what a doctor
13 thought about the clinical success? Is that what this is
14 trying to embody?

15 A. Exactly. I am referring to ophthalmologists, almost
16 all of whom, I believe, were glaucoma specialists.

17 Q. When you say "the investigator," that is an
18 ophthalmologist in the field?

19 A. That's right.

20 Q. What did they say about the quality of life in the
21 Alphagan .2 percent compared to the Alphagan P .15 percent?

22 A. Well, we don't have a lot of details in terms of how
23 it was measured and what the actual numbers were. But at
24 least the author's summary statement here, and presumably he
25 did a statistical analysis, Dr. Katz, states that there was

Tanna - direct

1 no statistical difference in the investigator's response to
2 the clinical success of the medications.

3 Q. I think you raise an interesting point. The sentence
4 that says that the treatments between -- this basically --
5 let me start this over.

6 Does this sentence basically state that the
7 Alphagan prior art .2 percent and the Alphagan P .15 percent
8 were the same, at least for this measurement?

9 A. That is my interpretation of what it says. I am
10 fairly certain that that is what the author intended to
11 report here.

12 By the way, I should point out, in case I didn't
13 make this clear when you asked me before, it is not as if
14 investigators were asked, just, you know, in a general way,
15 Was original formulation Alphagan as effective as the new
16 formulations being tested? But, per patient, there would
17 have been a question, Was this clinically successful?

18 That data, across all the patients, would have
19 been statistically analyzed.

20 Q. The data showing that the two formulations, the prior
21 art and the current one, are similar safety, that is
22 reflected in one sentence here. Is that correct?

23 A. I am sorry. Which sentence?

24 Q. The same sentence we have been looking at. There were
25 no statistical differences, the very first sentence of this

Tanna - direct

1 paragraph.

2 A. It says "clinical success." So that would take safety
3 into account. For example, if a patient had an adverse
4 event that required that they stop using the drug, that
5 would not be a clinical success.

6 Q. Just based on the page, this is one sentence. Is that
7 right?

8 A. This is one sentence.

9 Q. And then, now we go into the next sentence, which
10 talks about patient, differences in patients, how they rated
11 their satisfaction, and there is a difference there between
12 the brimonidine .2 percent and the brimonidine-Purite, the
13 new one, .15 percent. Is that correct?

14 A. Correct. There is a difference between what's now
15 called Alphagan P 0.15 percent and the original formulation
16 of brimonidine.

17 Q. When there is a difference, now, all of a sudden, we
18 are getting all the data and all the statistics and a lot of
19 analysis about differences where it shows that Alphagan P is
20 a little better for this specific parameter. Is that fair
21 to say, looking at this article? If we can look at the
22 whole page.

23 A. In general, that seems correct about this article.

24 Q. And Allergan was the sponsor of this article?

25 A. Correct.

Tanna - direct

1 Q. Let's look at Table 2 on the top. This seems to be
2 the major focus of Allergan. Can you tell us what this
3 tells us about the rate of allergy in the different
4 medications?

5 A. The allergic conjunctivitis rate is listed there. It
6 is the first item listed, under "Adverse event." It shows
7 that the percent incidence of allergy in the
8 brimonidine-Purite 0.15 percent group, that is the marketed
9 Alphagan P, is 9.2 percent. In the brimonidine-Purite 0.2
10 percent group, which was never marketed, was that means is,
11 is there a statistically significant difference among those
12 three? But it doesn't tell you -- it doesn't look
13 specifically and answer the question, Where does that
14 difference exist?

15 So the next column looks specifically for a
16 statistically significant difference between Alphagan P 0.15
17 percent, brimonidine-Purite 0.15 percent, and the original
18 prior art version, Alphagan .2 percent.

19 The conjunctivitis, if I may finish, it says
20 that that P value is 0.007 percent, which means there is a
21 statistically significant difference between that pair.

22 Q. I believe you stated that before 1999, you treated
23 patients with the old Alphagan. Is that correct?

24 A. That's correct, because that's all we had before 1999,
25 as far as brimonidine goes.

Tanna - direct

1 Q. And then eventually Allergan started marketing
2 Alphagan P .15 percent?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And they withdrew from the market before the generic
5 was available, the brimonidine .2 percent. Is that correct?

6 A. Prior to the loss of their exclusivity and prior, of
7 course, to the availability of the generic, correct.

8 Q. Did you have patients that you were treating with
9 Alphagan and then you moved them on to the new Alphagan P
10 .15 percent?

11 A. Yes. I had a lot of patients who were on original
12 formulation Alphagan when the new product became available.

13 Q. What is your opinion about the differences, if any,
14 that you saw in patients between these treatments?

15 A. I will say I had to switch, because, again, the
16 original formulation suddenly became unavailable. And I did
17 not observe a difference that I was able to detect in the
18 routine care of patients.

19 Q. Does that mean that the statistical difference doesn't
20 exist?

21 A. No. I didn't say that this doesn't exist. I just
22 didn't detect the difference. The differences were subtle
23 enough that, without formally studying it, I don't think it
24 could be detected.

25 Q. What is the purpose of having statistical analysis in

Tanna - direct

1 a document like this?

2 A. The purpose is to get to the question, really, in a
3 pure statistical sense, what you are trying to answer is the
4 question, What is the likelihood that this difference
5 occurred as a result of chance alone? And the corollary to
6 that is, What is the likelihood that this difference is due
7 to some real difference between the two drugs?

8 Q. Does statistical analysis try to get rid of what I
9 will refer to as "biases"?

10 A. Right. Whenever you are doing a formal study in which
11 you are doing statistical analyses, when you are
12 prospectively gathering data in a methodical way, that
13 eliminates a lot of the bias that would be present when a
14 clinician, in the course of taking care of patients, would
15 try and think about what the occurrence is of certain side
16 effects, because there is something called recall bias in
17 which we remember the worst case scenarios and those stick
18 in our minds, and then we can get a sense that there is a
19 difference sometimes when there really isn't.

20 Q. You mentioned worst case scenario. I would like to
21 take a look at ADX-7.

22 Dr. Tanna, how long have you been treating
23 patients with glaucoma?

24 A. Since July, 1995.

25 Q. Approximately how many patients have you seen from

Tanna - direct

1 that time till today?

2 A. Well, I did calculate for you that in the past ten
3 years while I have been at Northwestern, I think I have seen
4 about 50,000 visits.

5 Q. Have you ever seen a patient present an allergic
6 conjunctivitis reaction like this from a brimonidine
7 product?

8 A. I have never seen anything quite that bad from
9 brimonidine. I would say during the entire time I have
10 practiced ophthalmology, including as a resident, so going
11 back to 1995, I have seen maybe two or three people with
12 allergic conjunctivitis that terrible. I don't think any of
13 them had an allergic response to brimonidine.

14 Actually, I take that back. I think, more
15 accurately, those cases that I saw, they were viral
16 conjunctivitis that looked that bad, infectious
17 conjunctivitis.

18 Q. So this ADX-7, this shocking picture, isn't a typical
19 case of allergic conjunctivitis. Is that fair to say?

20 A. This is as atypical as they get.

21 Q. What do you do if a patient presents with an allergy
22 to brimonidine?

23 A. Discontinue the brimonidine.

24 Q. And what happens then?

25 A. It depends on what other medications the patient had

Tanna - direct

1 been on. Sometimes --

2 Q. What happens to the allergy then?

3 A. The allergy symptoms and signs go away typically over
4 the course of the next couple weeks.

5 Q. Is there any long-term damage, typically, from an
6 allergy to brimonidine?

7 A. No, not typically.

8 MR. SODIKOFF: Thank you, Your Honor. I am
9 done.

10 THE COURT: You are welcome, counsel.

11 Ms. Brooks.

12 MS. BROOKS: Thank you, Your Honor.

13 THE COURT: You may cross.

14 CROSS-EXAMINATION

15 BY MS. BROOKS:

16 Q. Hello, Dr. Tanna. My name is Juanita Brooks. I don't
17 believe we have ever met.

18 A. Good morning, Ms. Brooks.

19 Q. Dr. Tanna, I want to ask you just one question about
20 your very last point regarding the allergic reaction to
21 brimonidine. You were asked what happens as far as the
22 allergy, and you said that it essentially resolves itself.

23 A. That's correct --

24 Q. But --

25 A. -- once the offending agent is discontinued.

Tanna - cross

1 Q. But once a patient presents with allergic
2 conjunctivitis as a result of the brimonidine, are you
3 essentially prevented from re-prescribing the brimonidine,
4 once they develop that sensitivity?

5 A. Well, prevented, I don't know about prevented. There
6 have been a couple times, you know, within the past month
7 that I have used brimonidine as a single dose in a patient
8 who is known to have a brimonidine allergy because we were
9 about to do laser surgery and brimonidine is very effective
10 at preventing an adverse event that can occur after laser
11 surgery in which the pressure can spike for a day or two.

12 So I have used brimonidine occasionally in
13 people known to have a brimonidine allergy. But for chronic
14 use in someone who is known to have a brimonidine allergy,
15 you certainly wouldn't do it.

16 Q. That is what I meant to ask.

17 You certainly, as a physician, once an
18 individual has presented with an allergy as a result of
19 brimonidine, aren't going to prescribe it again for the
20 treatment, for example, of glaucoma?

21 A. Correct. You wouldn't use a medication that a person
22 is allergic to, knowing it.

23 Q. That then takes one weapon out of your arsenal in your
24 fight against glaucoma?

25 A. That's correct.

Tanna - cross

1 Q. Now, let's go back to some of your earlier opinions.
2 You gave us some opinions regarding what would or would not
3 have been obvious to one of skill in the art. Do you recall
4 that?

5 A. Yes, I do.

6 Q. And in your expert report, when you said, you referred
7 to the term one of skill in the art, you didn't give a
8 definition as to whom you believed one of skill in the art
9 would be.

10 A. I accepted Dr. Gil Banker's definition in my expert
11 opinion report, expert report.

12 But when I was deposed by Mr. Shear, I
13 acknowledged that Dr. Gil had a different definition, and
14 that I didn't think that the two were very different and I
15 didn't have any problem with agreeing to Dr. Gil's.

16 Q. To either one?

17 A. Correct.

18 Q. I think, when you say "Dr. Gil," are you sure you
19 don't mean Dr. Stella?

20 A. I thought it was Dr. Gil who described the Allergan
21 point of view of what an expert -- I am sorry, of what one
22 skilled in the art is. But I may be remembering
23 incorrectly.

24 Q. That is fine.

25 Let's take, then, for the purpose of your

Tanna - cross

1 testimony, the definition of whom one of skill in the art is
2 from Dr. Banker, Apotex's expert, since that's the one you
3 relied upon when you wrote your report.

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. Okay. If I could have the binders for you?

6 MS. BROOKS: If I might approach the witness,
7 Your Honor?

8 THE COURT: Yes, you may.

9 MS. BROOKS: Thank you. I do have an extra
10 copy, yet another copy, Your Honor, if the Court would like?

11 THE COURT: You have another copy?

12 MS. BROOKS: Yes, I do.

13 BY MS. BROOKS:

14 Q. Dr. Tanna, in your binder should be -- I didn't want
15 to put all of Dr. Banker's report in there because it's
16 pretty thick. But I did put in Pages 6, 7, and 8, where he
17 discusses whom one of skill in the art would be. He begins
18 on Page 6, where you see the Subsection (b), relevant prior
19 art and persons of ordinary skill in the art. Do you see
20 that?

21 A. Yes, Section 17 I think is where it starts.

22 Q. Then he, first of all, refers to the '078 patent.
23 That is the patent in this case that deals with Purite. I
24 take it you are not here to render any kind of opinion
25 regarding that particular patent?

Tanna - cross

1 A. Well, I have reviewed the patent carefully. I do have
2 an understanding of how Purite works. And, so, if you ask
3 me -- I don't think that I have said anything pertaining to
4 the '078 patent yet.

5 Q. Okay. Then, if we go to the next series of patents,
6 the '873, the '210, the '834, and the '337, that definition
7 of one of skill in the art begins at Paragraph 19. First of
8 all, Dr. Banker says that a person having ordinary skill in
9 the art with respect to the subject matter of the '210,
10 '337, '834, and '873 patents, would have at least a
11 doctorate degree in pharmacy, pharmacology, or
12 pharmaceutical sciences, and at least two years' experience.

13 Let me stop right there, Dr. Tanna. You don't
14 meet that definition of, Dr. Banker's definition of one of
15 skill in the art. Is that correct?

16 A. That's correct.

17 Q. He goes on to say, "Or a Bachelor of Science or Pharm
18 D, Doctor of Pharmacy Degree, and an additional two to three
19 years' experience developing ophthalmic pharmaceutical
20 compositions such as ophthalmic ointments and eyedrops
21 containing pharmaceutically active ingredients."

22 I take it, Dr. Tanna, you don't meet that
23 definition of Dr. Banker's definition of one of skill in the
24 art?

25 A. That's correct.

Tanna - cross

1 Q. Then he goes on to say, there is yet a third category,
2 "If a worker's formal education is not in the pharmaceutical
3 sciences or pharmacology, per se, but in a related field,
4 such as chemistry, to be one of ordinary skill in the art
5 would require such an individual to have several additional
6 years of actual experience formulating, developing, and/or
7 using such products."

8 I take it you don't meet that definition,
9 either?

10 A. You are correct.

11 Q. In fact, in Paragraph 20, he goes on to describe what
12 he means by that experience. He gives, for example, in the
13 middle of that paragraph, that the person's experience would
14 include pre-formulation and formulation activities relating
15 to the development of aqueous ophthalmic products, including
16 familiarity with common strategies for optimizing ophthalmic
17 formulations and improving stability.

18 And, again, I take it, Dr. Tanna, based on what
19 you have told us, you do not meet that definition of
20 Dr. Banker's definition of one of skill in the art?

21 A. Correct.

22 Q. And, in fact, you were very candid with us at your
23 deposition that you have no experience in formulating
24 ophthalmic products?

25 A. Correct. I only have experience in offering advice as

Tanna - cross

1 to formulating ophthalmic products to drug companies who
2 seek that advice.

3 Q. While, again, you offer advice when you were asked
4 about how particular products were formulated, you said,
5 That's not my area of expertise as to how products are
6 formulated.

7 Did I get that correctly?

8 A. The actual chemistry, that's correct, I don't do the
9 actual chemistry.

10 Q. In fact, you were asked about certain compositions of
11 various glaucoma medications and whether they were ionic or
12 not. And you said, I can't speak to that, I don't
13 formulate.

14 A. That's correct.

15 Q. Now, you understand, Dr. Tanna, that there is a reason
16 why, in the world of patent law, one has to look at the
17 patents through the eyes of one of skill in the art?

18 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor. That
19 calls for a legal conclusion.

20 THE COURT: You can rephrase that, Ms. Brooks.

21 MS. BROOKS: Thank you.

22 BY MS. BROOKS:

23 Q. Dr. Tanna, do you understand that in rendering an
24 opinion as to what would or would not have been obvious,
25 what must go into that opinion is what would or would not

Tanna - cross

1 have been obvious to one of skill in the art?

2 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor.

3 THE COURT: If he understands it, go ahead.

4 BY MS. BROOKS:

5 Q. Do you have that understanding, Dr. Tanna?

6 A. Could you repeat it, please?

7 Q. Sure. You understand, do you not, sir, in fact, you
8 put it in your expert report, that in viewing whether
9 something would or would not have been obvious, one views it
10 from the perspective of one of skill in the art?

11 A. Yes. I was advised by counsel that, in answering
12 those questions, I had to view it as one of ordinary skill
13 in the art as defined by Dr. Banker, not as myself.

14 Q. Excellent. Okay.

15 And do you understand the purpose of that is
16 because, for example, something that might seem very
17 complicated to me, a layperson, to one of skill in the art,
18 might be obvious, based on all the knowledge that they have
19 from their years of experience?

20 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor.

21 THE COURT: Overruled.

22 BY MS. BROOKS:

23 Q. Do you understand that, Dr. Tanna?

24 A. Would you repeat that, please?

25 MS. BROOKS: I will ask to have it read back.

Tanna - cross

1 (Pending question read.)

2 THE WITNESS: Yes, I agree with that.

3 BY MS. BROOKS:

4 Q. In fact, the reverse might be true, which is something
5 that may seem obvious to me, a layperson, like why don't you
6 just take brimonidine and put it in an artificial tear, may
7 not be obvious at all to one of skill in the art because
8 they know that formulation is much more complicated than
9 that. You understand that, too?

10 A. Well, I hear what you said. But I don't really agree
11 with that.

12 Q. So you don't agree that what should be taken into
13 consideration, in determining what would be obvious or not
14 to a formulator, you don't agree that what should be taken
15 into consideration is the knowledge of the formulator?

16 A. I agree that that should be taken into consideration.
17 What I am at issue with, and I do not really agree with, is
18 this idea that somehow having this special knowledge can
19 lead to one being unable to see something obvious to a
20 layperson. I don't agree with that. I don't really see how
21 that would happen.

22 Q. Let me ask you this: If it seemed obvious to a
23 layperson to simply take Purite, for example, and combine it
24 with brimonidine but one of skill in the art would know that
25 the Purite might oxidize the brimonidine, isn't that a

Tanna - cross

1 factor we should take into consideration?

2 A. Well, there is data in the literature that brimonidine
3 is resistant to oxidation. So I don't agree with that
4 particular example.

5 Q. My question, sir, was: If a formulator believes --
6 well, you said there is data in the literature that
7 brimonidine itself is -- what was the word?

8 A. I said "resistant." But I should say relatively
9 resistant to oxidation.

10 Q. Relatively resistant to oxidation. Do you know the
11 makeup of Purite?

12 A. I do.

13 Q. That, in fact, it is an oxychloro?

14 A. Well, it's a sodium chlorite solution, which exists in
15 three different species, sodium chlorite, sodium chlorate
16 and chlorine dioxide as very, very low concentrations, I am
17 familiar with that. And I am familiar with the idea that
18 the way chlorine dioxide works is as an oxidizing agent.

19 Q. If we look at JTX-044, which was used with
20 Dr. Kerslake, if it is not up there in front of you, I will
21 hand you my copy or we can put it on the screen.

22 MR. SODIKOFF: I don't have a copy, Your Honor.

23 MS. BROOKS: Counsel just used it with
24 Dr. Kerslake.

25 If I can approach the witness and give him my

Tanna - cross

1 copy.

2 MR. SODIKOFF: So he can see the whole document.

3 THE WITNESS: It's a one-page -- I see. There
4 are more pages here.

5 BY MS. BROOKS:

6 Q. Dr. Tanna, can you see, right under "Recommendations,"
7 the first bullet point, where the second sentence talks
8 about the issue will be the stability of the formulation due
9 to potential for drug oxidation?

10 Do you see that?

11 A. I certainly see it. But there was prior art data that
12 showed that brimonidine is relatively resistant to
13 oxidation. So, although, because you are using an oxidizing
14 agent as a preservative, you have to be thinking about it, I
15 believe one of ordinary skill would be motivated to try it
16 and would have a reasonable expectation of success.

17 Q. Now, Dr. Tanna, we have already established, you are
18 not one of ordinary skill. Correct?

19 A. I agree with that as defined by Dr. Banker.

20 Q. Thank you.

21 A. But, nevertheless, I have read this information and I
22 am aware of it, so, in order to completely answer your
23 question, I had to make that statement that I just made.

24 Q. But, Dr. Tanna, my question was actually quite simple:
25 You are not one of ordinary skill. Correct?

Tanna - cross

1 A. That's correct, based on Dr. Banker's definition.

2 Q. Thank you.

3 Were you here for the testimony of Dr. Olejnik?

4 A. Yes, I did hear Dr. Olejnik's testimony.

5 Q. You heard his vast, decades and decades of experience
6 working in ophthalmic formulations?

7 A. Yes, I did.

8 Q. And you heard the testimony of Dr. Kerslake?

9 A. I did.

10 Q. And you heard Dr. Kerslake, while having been out of
11 the science for 12 years, at the time of these formulations,
12 having a Ph.D. in this area and having been a formulator for
13 quite some time?

14 A. I am aware that he was from the testimony I heard,
15 correct.

16 Q. You heard the expression of these two gentlemen that
17 they were not only concerned with whether or not the Purite
18 might oxidize the brimonidine, but whether or not the Purite
19 itself, in combination with an active ingredient might
20 become unstable?

21 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor. This is
22 argumentative. The record is what the record is.

23 THE COURT: No, no. This is cross-examination,
24 counsel.

25 BY MS. BROOKS:

Tanna - cross

1 Q. You heard them testify to that, did you not, sir?

2 A. I did hear that.

3 Q. Again, that was their concerns as formulators at the
4 time?

5 A. That's what they stated.

6 Q. In combing --

7 A. That's what -- you know, I don't know, the
8 recollections were incomplete and so on. I don't know that
9 Dr. Kerslake actually stated that that was a concern of his
10 at the time. I don't think he remembered a lot of what
11 occurred at the time. And I did hear Dr. Olejnik say very
12 clearly that that was a concern of his at the time.

13 Q. Thank you.

14 In addition to that, you heard the concerns of
15 Dr. Olejnik, at least, let's stick with Dr. Olejnik, that
16 brimonidine, if it is formulated at higher pH's, has
17 solubility problems?

18 A. He stated that that was a concern of his.

19 Q. And, in fact, the actual solubility studies reflecting
20 how the solubility of brimonidine is pH dependent were
21 actually put into the patents that Dr. Olejnik showed the
22 Court?

23 A. They were. But I don't completely agree with the
24 interpretation that's been discussed.

25 Q. But you, yourself, admit that you are not one of skill

Tanna - cross

1 in the art. Is that correct?

2 A. I am not one of skill in the art as defined by
3 Dr. Banker.

4 Q. Let's go to something you can tell us about, though.

5 You told us that it is known, and I believe you
6 went through several, several papers about how BAK,
7 benzoalkonium chloride, can be hard on the eye?

8 A. I think that I used the term that it has ocular
9 surface toxicity. I think, more precisely, to say it
10 accurately, would be that there is ocular surface toxicity
11 associated with the use of benzoalkonium chloride and that
12 benzoalkonium chloride has a proinflammatory effect on the
13 surface of the eye.

14 Q. I want to get your words exactly. I tried to
15 shorthand it with "hard on the eye." Ocular surface
16 toxicity?

17 A. Correct.

18 Q. What was the next one?

19 A. A proinflammatory effect on the ocular surface.

20 Q. Proinflammatory effect?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And were there any more?

23 A. Well, we know that it induces fibroblast
24 proliferation, so the scar tissue story as it pertains to
25 glaucoma surgery.

Tanna - cross

1 We also no that it destabilizes the tear film
2 and can exacerbate the symptoms of dry eye.

3 Q. We have ocular surface toxicity, pro-inflammatory,
4 fibroblast proliferation, destabilizes the other --

5 A. Destabilizes the tear film and thereby can exacerbate
6 the symptoms of dry eye.

7 Q. Okay, great.

8 That was known. Right? You showed us paper
9 after paper how those sort of phenomena were discussed out
10 there in the field?

11 A. That's correct.

12 Q. So you have got all these formulators sitting around
13 back at their various ophthalmic companies knowing that BAK
14 could, in fact, have ocular surface toxicity,
15 proinflammatory effect, fibroblast proliferation and
16 destabilization of tear film?

17 A. While at the same time knowing that the majority of
18 products had benzoalkonium chloride and it was reasonably
19 well tolerated, people's eyes were not falling out of their
20 heads, but that there would be a benefit to come up with a
21 gentler preservative.

22 Q. Absolutely.

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. They knew that, they thought, you know what? If I can
25 just substitute this BAK with a gentler preservative, I am

Tanna - cross

1 going to make for my company a better product. Right?

2 A. I believe that people were thinking along those lines
3 prior to July '99.

4 Q. And that certainly would have been in their minds, you
5 said, prior to July '99. Is that right?

6 A. That's correct.

7 Q. I would like to go back and talk a little bit about
8 the various glaucoma medications that are on the market that
9 you, yourself, use.

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. I believe you mentioned some of them.

12 The leading one, is that Xalatan? Is that the
13 leading glaucoma medication?

14 A. That is the most commonly prescribed glaucoma
15 medication in the United States today.

16 Q. It has been out there for quite some time. Is that
17 right?

18 A. I believe '96.

19 Q. It's manufactured by Pharmacia?

20 A. Pharmacia does not exist. It is now manufactured by
21 Pfizer.

22 Q. Pfizer. So one of those mergers. Now we have got
23 Pfizer manufacturing Xalatan. Is that right?

24 A. That's correct.

25 Q. Xalatan has BAK in it, does it not?

Tanna - cross

1 A. It does.

2 Q. And has had since 1996?

3 A. Yes. There have been no formulation changes since it
4 was first FDA-approved and marketed.

5 Q. So your answer, sir, is yes?

6 A. Correct.

7 Q. Trusopt, that is another glaucoma medication.
8 Correct?

9 A. Correct.

10 Q. And that has BAK in it, does it not?

11 A. Yes, it does.

12 Q. And Timoptic, that is another glaucoma medication?

13 A. That is.

14 Q. And that has BAK in it, does it not?

15 A. It's available in multiple formulations and there is a
16 formulation available with no preservative. It's called
17 Timoptic Ocudose.

18 Q. So preservative-free glaucoma medications, first of
19 all, those can only be unit-dose medications. Is that
20 right?

21 A. That's correct.

22 Q. You can't use it chronically over time?

23 A. There is a preservative-free multiple-dose ophthalmic
24 medication.

25 Q. And how does that work? You have to do it one dose at

Tanna - cross

1 a time and it seals back up?

2 A. No, the active ingredient --

3 THE COURT: As interesting as that is,
4 counsel --

5 MS. BROOKS: It is totally irrelevant. So I
6 will move on.

7 BY MS. BROOKS:

8 Q. Let's stick with the glaucoma medications that have
9 preservatives in them.

10 A. Sure.

11 Q. So we have already covered Xalatan has BAK. Correct?

12 A. That's correct.

13 Q. Trusopt has BAK?

14 A. That's correct.

15 Q. Timoptic has BAK?

16 A. That's correct.

17 Q. Rescula, is that another glaucoma medication?

18 A. Rescula is no longer marketed in the United States.

19 Q. We will take that one off our chart. Lumigan has BAK?

20 A. Yes, it.

21 Q. Cosopt has BAK?

22 A. That's correct.

23 Q. Betoptic, is that still on the market?

24 A. It is.

25 Q. Does that have BAK?

Tanna - cross

1 A. It does.

2 Q. Betagan has BAK?

3 A. Correct.

4 Q. And Azopt has BAK?

5 A. Correct.

6 Q. And the original Alphagan had BAK?

7 A. Correct.

8 Q. In fact, of the leading glaucoma medications, the only
9 two where the formulators were able to substitute BAK with a
10 more gentle preservative was Alphagan P. Correct?

11 A. That's correct.

12 Q. And Travatan Z?

13 A. That's correct. Well, there is another one out there
14 and it's dodecynium (phonetic) bromide. But it is pretty
15 similar in terms of toxicity. It is thought to be less
16 toxic, but I don't think there is a big difference at all.

17 Q. So while they try to substitute in that case, the one
18 you just told us about, they tried to substitute a more
19 gentle preservative, apparently, it didn't work?

20 A. It was an alternate preservative. It worked, it's
21 commercially available. It's called dodecynium (phonetic)
22 bromide. That is the preservative.

23 Q. But of the, all the leading glaucoma medications that
24 we have just talked about, the only two where formulators
25 were able to do what made perfect sense, which was

Tanna - cross

1 substitute BAK for a more gentle preservative, was in the
2 case of Alphagan P and Travatan Z?

3 A. In a meaningful way in terms of the difference, yes, I
4 agree with that.

5 Q. Thank you.

6 And Travatan Z, is that a line extension by
7 Alcon of the original Travatan?

8 A. My understanding is it did not result in additional
9 patent protection. That's my understanding. But I am not a
10 lawyer and I do not know the details of whether that's the
11 case.

12 I did ask fairly senior people at Alcon that
13 particular question. And my understanding in that response
14 is that there was no change in exclusivity.

15 Q. Are you aware, sir, that there are four listed patents
16 for Travatan Z in the Orange Book?

17 A. I am not aware of that.

18 Q. Okay. Thank you.

19 Now, in addition to all these other companies,
20 the makers of Xalatan and Trusopt and Betagan and Timoptic,
21 not being able to substitute BAK with a more gentle
22 preservative, I would like to show you what was shown in
23 opening statement --

24 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor.

25 THE COURT: She hasn't finished the question,

Tanna - cross

1 counsel.

2 MR. SODIKOFF: I think she is mischaracterizing
3 the testimony.

4 THE COURT: She is just talking about showing
5 him something.

6 BY MS. BROOKS:

7 Q. I would like to show you what was put up in opening
8 statement by Exela as to what their formulation of Alphagan
9 P is going to be. And it was opening Slide 23.

10 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, I object. That is
11 outside the scope of both direct and his expert report. We
12 didn't even have Exela's formulation during discovery.

13 MS. BROOKS: Your Honor, this is just
14 cross-examination to establish yet there is another
15 proposed, at least, formulation that is going to obtain BAK
16 yet again.

17 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, we heard Mr. Boggs
18 say the whole point of that was to try to avoid patent
19 infringement. It wasn't scientifically based. I don't
20 think it is really relevant to what we are talking about
21 here.

22 THE COURT: What about his first basis, it
23 sounds like it might be outside the scope of the direct
24 examination?

25 MS. BROOKS: I thought we dealt significantly on

Tanna - cross

1 direct about BAK and how one would have been motivated to
2 replace it with a more gentle preservative. I am just
3 trying to show the Court all the examples where formulators
4 either weren't motivated to do so or were unable to do so,
5 one of two things.

6 THE COURT: All right.

7 BY MS. BROOKS:

8 Q. Sir, I just wanted to show you what is put up as Slide
9 23 in Exela's opening. It appears that Exela is, if they
10 ever do get FDA approval, going to use BAK as their
11 preservative in what would be a generic Alphagan P?

12 THE COURT: What has been done and what might be
13 done, I think, there is a difference.

14 I am going to reverse myself. I am going to
15 sustain this objection.

16 MS. BROOKS: Fine, Your Honor. Thank you. I
17 will move on.

18 BY MS. BROOKS:

19 Q. Now, in addition to one wanting to substitute BAK for
20 a more gentle preservative, I believe you said that it was
21 also a good idea to try to have the ophthalmic medication be
22 as close to the pH of the eye as possible?

23 A. That's a general principle in formulating ophthalmic
24 medications and in terms of what we want. It's not always
25 possible. But it is, for example, the pH of Trusopt is 4.3,

Tanna - cross

1 very low. But that's because the molecule requires such a
2 low pH to go into solution, at least that particular
3 molecule, dorzolamide.

4 Q. I think you answered my question.

5 A. It is desirable.

6 Q. You answered my question, thank you.

7 Even the next one I was going to ask, which is,
8 is it desirable? And apparently it is.

9 A. It is desirable to attempt to formulate ophthalmic
10 medications, eyedrops, at a pH and other physical
11 characteristics as close to the ocular tear film as
12 possible, in general.

13 Q. And that, again, was a well-known concept out in the
14 industry. Right?

15 A. Right.

16 Q. And, yet, despite that, there were many, many
17 formulations that were unable to do that. Correct?

18 A. Correct.

19 Q. For example, Trusopt, is that a 4.5 pH?

20 A. I thought 4.3, offhand. I could be mistaken. You
21 have it in front of you. I haven't looked at it in a couple
22 years, probably.

23 Q. Actually, it is my handwriting I can't read. Maybe it
24 is 4.3.

25 All we know is it is on the acidic end of the pH

Tanna - cross

1 scale?

2 A. That's correct.

3 Q. It is out there being sold right now as a glaucoma
4 medication?

5 A. Correct.

6 Q. For whatever reasons, the manufacturers of Trusopt
7 were either unable or unwilling to formulate that drug at a
8 higher pH?

9 A. In that case, it was because they were unable to do
10 it.

11 Q. Unable to do it. Would they have to overcome some
12 form of obstacle in order to formulate that drug at a higher
13 pH?

14 A. It just couldn't be done. A different company had to
15 go to an entirely different molecule and put it into
16 suspension in order to achieve that class of medication at a
17 higher pH. But there was motivation there to do it.

18 Q. But they were unable to?

19 A. Well, they kind of went around it by taking a
20 different molecule and putting it into suspension. So there
21 was motivation for another company to improve upon it and
22 they did.

23 Q. So if one can't keep a particular molecule, active
24 ingredient, in solution at a higher pH, one way to go around
25 it or attempt to go around it would be to use a suspension.

Tanna - cross

1 Correct?

2 A. That's correct.

3 Q. And it wouldn't necessarily be obvious at all that you
4 could do something else to it that would enable you to make
5 a solution with that same active ingredient. Correct?

6 A. Well, brimonidine 0.2 percent was in solution.

7 Q. Exactly.

8 A. I am not sure I understand the problem.

9 Q. Exactly. Brimonidine .2 percent was in solution, was
10 it not?

11 A. It was.

12 Q. It wasn't a suspension?

13 A. Correct.

14 Q. But it wasn't at a pH close to the pH of the eye, was
15 it?

16 A. Well, it was close. It was 6.3, 6.5, somewhere in
17 that range. That's pretty close. That is not 7.4, but it's
18 close.

19 Q. It was at a pH on the acid end of the pH scale, was it
20 not?

21 A. That's correct. But it was close. I don't think I
22 would say it was far away from a physiologic pH.

23 Q. I am sorry, I didn't think I said "far away."

24 Let's make sure we are having the same
25 terminology. Neutral on a pH scale of 7?

Tanna - cross

1 A. Correct.

2 Q. The pH of the eye is approximately 7.4?

3 A. The pH of the tear film.

4 Q. Thank you. I want to be precise. The pH of the tear
5 film is approximately 7.4?

6 A. Correct.

7 Q. And the original Alphagan was at about 6.3 to 6.4 pH.
8 Correct?

9 A. That's correct.

10 Q. Now, Alphagan P is at a pH of approximately 7.2?

11 A. Correct.

12 Q. And Alphagan P .1 percent is at a pH of approximately
13 7.7?

14 A. Correct.

15 Q. And Alphagan P and Alphagan P .1 percent came out as a
16 result of the reformulation efforts that we have heard
17 Dr. Olejnik and Dr. Kerslake testify about. Correct?

18 A. Correct.

19 Q. Now, you mentioned that you have patients that
20 originally you had prescribed Alphagan to, and that you also
21 suggested to your patients that they use Refresh Tears. Do
22 you remember that testimony?

23 A. I do, yes.

24 Q. And you said that when they did that, when they used
25 the Alphagan medication and they used the Refresh Tears

Tanna - cross

1 medication, that they didn't seem to have any problems with
2 it?

3 A. Correct.

4 Q. Did you recommend to your patients that they attempt
5 to take the Alphagan formulation and literally mix it into
6 the Refresh Tears formulation and shake it up and leave it
7 on their shelf and try to use it in that fashion?

8 A. No, I did not.

9 Q. I take it you didn't recommend them to do that because
10 you didn't know what the results of such a formulation as
11 that would be?

12 A. No. I didn't recommend it because it would be
13 ludicrous to recommend such a thing, in general.

14 Q. Of course, it would.

15 Now, are you aware -- you mentioned that a lot
16 of glaucoma patients also suffer from dry eye. Do you
17 recall that?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Are you aware that the original Alphagan was in a
20 vehicle called Liquifilm Tears, which was actually an
21 artificial tear product?

22 A. Yes, I do remember. An older generation Allergan
23 artificial tear product, I believe.

24 Q. Now, you mentioned, you were asked a question: Is
25 there anything that would dissuade one to combine

Tanna - cross

1 brimonidine and Refresh Tears. Do you remember that
2 question?

3 A. Yes, I do.

4 Q. And you answered no, there was nothing?

5 A. Correct.

6 Q. Correct?

7 You answered that question not as one of skill
8 in the art. Correct?

9 A. That is correct.

10 Q. And, so, once again, you wouldn't be aware, as one not
11 of skill in the art, what the concerns of one of skill in
12 the art would be in making such a formulation?

13 A. I am aware of the general concepts of what the concern
14 would be. I believe the question posed was, would I try it?
15 And, yes, I would.

16 Q. But not as one of skill in the art?

17 A. Correct.

18 Q. Now let's go on to some of the papers that you went
19 over with counsel. I am going to need to get the borrowed
20 reading glasses from Dr. Olejnik here.

21 You discussed for us DTX-063, which was part of
22 a textbook called The Glaucomas. Do you recall that?

23 A. I do.

24 Q. And, counsel, when direct-examining you, had you turn
25 briefly to AGN 225387, which was the section on brimonidine.

Tanna - cross

1 Do you recall being asked that?

2 A. Yes, I do.

3 Q. I can't remember what part of this brimonidine section
4 you referred to in your direct. Do you recall which part?

5 A. I was asked to read from the first paragraph, I
6 believe.

7 Q. Okay. Let's, then, read from the third paragraph.

8 This is a discussion about how brimonidine
9 lowers intraocular pressure in various animal models over a
10 dose range of .001 percent to 1 percent.

11 Do you see that?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And then there is a citation 43, I assume that is a
14 citation to the reference from which this statement came?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. And then, before we get to the next sentence, just to
17 put some background around this, you were asked questions
18 about whether one should have known that you could treat,
19 you could use the brimonidine at .15 percent. You were
20 shown some studies where the study was done at .08 percent,
21 .2 percent and .5 percent. Do you recall that?

22 A. Yes, I do.

23 Q. And you were asked whether, in looking at that data,
24 one should have known that you could have actually made a
25 therapeutically effective composition at .15 percent. Do

Tanna - cross

1 you remember, you drew that circle in between the .08 and
2 the .2?

3 A. Yes, I do.

4 Q. Let's look at what this reference actually says about
5 that study.

6 "In a one-month dose-response study in humans,
7 brimonidine .08 percent, .2 percent, and .5 percent, used
8 twice daily, lowered pressure in open-angle glaucoma and
9 ocular hypertensive patients, with a maximal pressure
10 decrease between 20 percent and 30 percent."

11 Did I read that correctly?

12 A. You did. And can I just add right now, it pertains to
13 earlier visits in the study than we were referring to.

14 Q. Okay. And we are going to get to those later papers
15 and look at the later visits.

16 Let's look at what the author's conclusion is.

17 A. Here, the author, if I may interrupt --

18 Q. Actually, you can't.

19 A. The authors of the paper --

20 Q. Dr. Tanna, there needs to be a question pending, I am
21 afraid.

22 A. I'm sorry.

23 Q. That's okay. I promise I won't interrupt you. But I
24 need to pose the question. Okay?

25 A. Yes.

Tanna - cross

1 Q. The authors concluded that brimonidine .2 percent
2 appears to be the most effective dose, not only because it
3 was at the top of the dose-response curve, but also because
4 it had the fewest systemic and local side effects.

5 Is that what the author's conclusion was that
6 was in DTX-063 or at least is referenced in DTX-063?

7 A. Again, what I was trying to say before is, just to
8 make it clear to the Court, that, here, "authors" refers to
9 the authors of the original study, which we looked at, and I
10 would actually have to go to it to make sure, because I
11 think that it's a mistake here, because it said that, also,
12 it had the few systemic and local side effects, which we
13 know is not true because the lowest systemic and local side
14 effects were observed in the 0.08 percent brimonidine group,
15 and I know when you write a textbook, you can make a
16 mistake.

17 Q. All right. Let's go to the actual study, DTX-111.
18 You should have that in front of you because I believe it
19 was used by counsel.

20 A. I do have it.

21 Q. That is the Derick study?

22 A. Correct.

23 Q. Let's look at the "Results" section on the first page
24 of the Derick study. And, specifically, in the middle, does
25 it say right here, On days one and 21, so we are measuring

Tanna - cross

1 two different days here, day one and day 21. Did I get that
2 right?

3 A. Correct.

4 Q. The .2 percent and the .5 percent treatment groups
5 exhibited significantly greater IOP decreases than did the
6 .08 percent group?

7 Is that what Dr. Derick and his colleagues
8 reported under the "Results" section of the study located at
9 DTX-111?

10 A. That is not exactly what they accurately reported.
11 But it is what it states right here in their abstract.

12 Q. That's right there on the very front page. If one
13 were wanting to get a quick analysis, we could look at
14 "Results" and we could see this language verbatim under
15 "Results" on that exhibit. Is that right?

16 A. But that would not be the way to get good information.

17 Q. Now, the way to get good information would probably be
18 to look at the tables. Right?

19 A. To read the methods and results, I agree with what
20 Dr. Olejnik said the other day, you have to look at the
21 paper.

22 Q. Thank you. Dr. Olejnik, I am sure, will be happy to
23 hear that.

24 Let's go look at the tables. Specifically,
25 let's start with Table 3.

Tanna - cross

1 Now, does Table 3 show us measures of the
2 reduction of IOP on day one, day seven, day 14, day 21, and
3 day 28?

4 A. No, it doesn't show us the reduction of IOP. It tells
5 us the proportion of -- actually, in this case, it is the
6 number of individuals who achieved a certain threshold.

7 Q. Thank you. Okay. So it is actually showing us the
8 number of individuals who achieved a certain threshold of
9 IOP lowering. Is that right?

10 A. That's correct.

11 Q. Okay. And if we look here at day one, we have 12
12 individuals in the .08 percent group that reached that
13 threshold. Correct?

14 A. That's correct.

15 Q. We have 23 individuals in the .2 percent group who
16 reached that threshold. Correct?

17 A. Correct.

18 Q. And we have 38 individuals in the .5 percent group
19 that reached that threshold?

20 A. Correct.

21 Q. Now, let's go to the halfway point. Let's look at Day
22 14. What have we got? Now we have got only eight
23 individuals in the .08 percent group that have reached that
24 threshold. Correct?

25 A. Correct.

Tanna - cross

1 Q. We have 15 individuals in the .2 percent group that
2 has reached that threshold. Is that right?

3 A. Correct.

4 Q. Almost twice the number of people in the .08 group on
5 day 14. Is that right?

6 A. Well, you say "almost twice." I say eight to 15,
7 which is what the table says. It's close to twice.

8 Q. Twice would be 16?

9 A. Correct.

10 Q. So we are one percent short of twice?

11 A. Correct.

12 Q. Okay. And then 13 individuals who have reached --
13 what was the term again?

14 A. Well, it's a threshold value that they have selected
15 among an infinite number of possible threshold values.

16 Q. Thirteen individuals who have reached the threshold
17 value in the .5 percent group. Correct?

18 A. Correct.

19 Q. Okay. And then, if we go down to day 28, we have
20 seven individuals who have reached the threshold value in
21 the .08 percent group. Correct?

22 A. Correct.

23 Q. We have 15 individuals who have reached the threshold
24 value in the .2 percent group. Correct?

25 A. Correct.

Tanna - cross

1 Q. And now, if I am doing my math correctly, we actually
2 have twice as many individuals in the .2 percent group who
3 have reached the threshold values on day 28 than those that
4 reached the threshold values in the .8 percent group?

5 A. Correct. But at .5, only ten.

6 Q. Exactly. And as a result of that, this data right
7 here where we only have -- we have less people reaching the
8 threshold value in the .5 percent group, the authors, if we
9 could go to the very last page in the paper on Page 135,
10 which is Bates number 25142 right above "References," that
11 paragraph right there, there we go, what the authors
12 conclude is, "Because there appears to be no evidence to
13 indicate that .5 percent is a more potent ocular hypotensive
14 agent than the .2 percent, and because there are greater
15 local and systemic side effects associated with the .5
16 percent concentration, brimonidine .2 percent appears to be
17 the appropriate concentration for further long-term
18 studies."

19 Did I read that correctly?

20 A. You read it correctly.

21 Q. Now, let's --

22 A. To me, no, that does not match what is stated in the
23 book chapter from which you read a while ago.

24 Q. I thought the book chapter also said that .2 percent
25 was the way to go?

Tanna - cross

1 A. No. I don't think that's what you showed me. I think
2 that what you showed me said something different, actually.

3 Q. All right. Let's go back, if we could, to DTX-063 and
4 specifically Bates number 225387. And down to the third
5 paragraph, I am sorry, second column, third paragraph,
6 Brimonidine lowers intraocular pressure, there we go.

7 So what I had read to you was, the authors
8 concluded that brimonidine .2 percent appears to be the most
9 effective dose, then it goes on to say, not only because it
10 was at the top of the dose response curve. Let me stop
11 there.

12 You don't take issue with that, that first part?

13 A. That the authors concluded that. They did conclude
14 that.

15 Q. But also because it had the fewest systemic and local
16 side effects. Is that the part you take issue with?

17 A. Correct. Because the previous sentence here suggests
18 they are looking at all three. And the authors of the
19 original paper, when they made the statement about going
20 with .2, they were really comparing the side effects of .2
21 versus .5, and they didn't include .08.

22 Q. Excellent point, Dr. Tanna. Had they included .08,
23 they would have seen yet additional reduced side effects in
24 the .08 group, would they not?

25 A. That's correct.

Tanna - cross

1 Q. Less side effects in the .08 group than in the .2
2 percent group. Right?

3 A. Correct.

4 Q. So an enhanced safety profile in the .08 percent
5 group?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. But there was a tradeoff for that, was there not?

8 A. There was a tradeoff that impacted very dramatically
9 the early study, day one, day seven, day 14 that I think you
10 looked at, too. But at day 28, the differences were really
11 very small.

12 Q. We will go back and look at those differences in a
13 second. But the bottom line, Dr. Tanna, I think you
14 actually mentioned this on direct, is it's not going to do a
15 physician any good to get a better safety profile if the
16 tradeoff is that the drug is less effective?

17 A. That's not necessarily true. A clinician has to take
18 into account both efficacy and side effects. And he has to
19 balance them in finding optimal balance for a particular
20 patient.

21 So, in fact, you may tradeoff some loss of
22 efficacy in exchange for some benefit in terms of
23 tolerability.

24 Q. You certainly wouldn't be willing to trade off a
25 significant loss of efficacy in exchange for better

Tanna - cross

1 tolerability?

2 A. Maybe you would. It depends on what you mean by
3 "significant."

4 Q. Well, for example, let's go back to DTX -- I am
5 looking for the Derick study, DTX-111, I believe. Let's go
6 to that table we were looking at. If you can get twice as
7 many patients, if we look at Day 28, twice as many patients
8 meeting the threshold requirement on .2 percent than you did
9 on .08 percent, then would you agree with the author's
10 recommendations at the end of the Derick paper that .2
11 percent appeared to be the appropriate concentration for
12 further long-term studies?

13 A. No, because this table is not how I judge efficacy of
14 a drug. I don't judge efficacy solely or primarily based on
15 some threshold reduction.

16 I can explain why, if you wish.

17 Q. That's okay. Since I am on the clock, you can explain
18 it when they get up on redirect so it comes off their time.
19 Okay?

20 A. Sure.

21 Q. But, just to be clear, the authors believed it was the
22 correct conclusion. Correct?

23 A. The authors stated that .2 appears appropriate for
24 further development. The authors were consultants to
25 Allergan. I don't know what they really believed. And I

Tanna - cross

1 don't know for sure that, with all the data in hand, they
2 truly felt that .08 was not worth pursuing. I don't know
3 that.

4 Q. Well, we know that Alphagan came out at .2 percent?

5 A. I think that they were on a .2 railroad track at this
6 point.

7 Q. My question, sir, was we know that Alphagan came out
8 at .2 percent. Correct?

9 A. I thought it was a statement. But, yes.

10 Q. I can't remember, Dr. Tanna, did you talk about
11 DTX-296?

12 A. Remind what that is.

13 Q. That is a paper by a Dr. Walters. If you didn't talk
14 about it, then I won't ask you about it, but it was in your
15 binder so I am just wondering?

16 A. I am familiar with it, but I did not talk about it.

17 Q. If you didn't talk about it, then I won't ask any
18 questions about it.

19 THE COURT: This is a good time to break for our
20 lunch. Okay.

21 MS. BROOKS: Thank you, Your Honor.

22 (Luncheon recess taken.)

23 THE COURT: Counsel, let's continue. Please be
24 seated.

25 Ms. Brooks.

Tanna - cross

1 MS. BROOKS: Thank you, Your Honor.

2 BY MS. BROOKS:

3 Q. Almost done, Dr. Tanna. Just a couple more points.

4 We talked earlier about all the different
5 glaucoma medications that are still on the market that have
6 BAK as the preservative. Do you recall that?

7 A. Yes, I do.

8 Q. One of the ones that I mentioned briefly was Lumigan.
9 Are you familiar with Lumigan?

10 A. I am.

11 Q. Lumigan is of the prostamide family?

12 A. I consider it a prostamide analog. That is a subtle
13 discrepancy between the way Allergan and some people
14 describe it and the way as I describe it.

15 Q. For us agreeing, let's say it's part of the
16 prostaglandin family?

17 A. I can even meet you where you are if you wish. It's
18 semantics.

19 Q. I will meet you.

20 The mechanisms of action for the prostaglandins
21 is that the prostaglandins treat glaucoma, or lowering of
22 intraocular pressure, by increasing the uveoscleral outflow?

23 A. That's correct.

24 Q. Is that, as a physician, your preferred method of
25 action, rather than, for example, decreasing aqueous humor

Tanna - cross

1 production, you would rather increase the outflow, the
2 uveoscleral outflow?

3 A. In general, my preference would be improved outflow,
4 if I had a choice of how a particular medication works. But
5 it does not matter to me whether it's by uveoscleral outflow
6 or tubular pathway outflow, because outflow medications are
7 better than medications that reduce aqueous production, in
8 my opinion. There is no evidence of that, by the way.

9 Q. In your opinion, even though there is no evidence of
10 that, your personal opinion is you prefer those types?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. The ones that increase the outflow rather than
13 decrease the production?

14 A. Correct.

15 Q. One of those is this Lumigan drug we talked about.
16 Correct?

17 A. Correct.

18 Q. The active ingredient in Lumigan is called
19 bimatoprost?

20 A. Correct.

21 Q. Allergan manufactured that. Correct?

22 A. Correct.

23 Q. Lumigan came on the market at about the same time that
24 Alphagan P did, didn't it?

25 A. I believe so. Within a year, I'd say.

Tanna - cross

1 Q. Lumigan has BAK as its preservative?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. And, yet, at that point in time, when Allergan was
4 formulating Lumigan, we know that Refresh Tears with Purite
5 was already on the market, 1997. Correct?

6 A. Correct.

7 Q. Yet, despite that, the formulators at Allergan did
8 not, for whatever reason, substitute the BAK in Lumigan for
9 Purite?

10 A. That's correct.

11 Q. Now, let's go look briefly at the Katz paper that you
12 talked about, DTX-170.

13 Specifically, if we could go to Table 2, which
14 appears on page 124, I believe that is the table you were
15 questioned about by counsel.

16 While we are looking for that, let's just, I
17 want to make sure to establish what we are looking at here.
18 The Katz paper is talking about a study that was done
19 internally at Allergan, I believe you told us. Is that
20 right?

21 A. No. This study was a multi-central clinical trial.
22 It was done at numerous centers.

23 Q. That's right. I am sorry. But it was sponsored by
24 Allergan?

25 A. This is the one, it's the two FDA pivotal trials, 007

Tanna - cross

1 and 008. Those are the Allergan internal document
2 references to those two clinical trials.

3 Q. And those two pivotal clinical trials turned into what
4 was FDA approval for Alphagan P?

5 A. That was part of the NDA.

6 Q. Now, if we look at what this particular -- the various
7 formulations that are being tested here, the first column is
8 brimonidine Purite .15 percent. Is that right?

9 A. That's correct.

10 Q. Then our next formulation is brimonidine-Purite .2
11 percent. Is that right?

12 A. That's correct.

13 Q. Then the next formulation is brimonidine .2 percent?

14 A. Correct. The original formulation.

15 Q. All right. So the very third column is the original
16 formulation. That's Alphagan. Is that right?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Now, if one wanted to see whether or not it was the
19 BAK, the preservative, that was in Alphagan that might be
20 causing, for example, the allergic conjunctivitis, one way
21 to do that would be to substitute the BAK for the Purite.
22 Correct?

23 A. Correct.

24 Q. But if you did that, you would want to make sure that
25 you kept everything else the same in order to be able to

Tanna - cross

1 really focus in on whether it was the BAK versus the Purite.
2 Right?

3 A. That's correct, yes.

4 Q. So if you look at formula 2, the amount of brimonidine
5 in that formula is the same as the amount of brimonidine in
6 the original Alphagan. Correct?

7 A. Correct.

8 Q. Then formula one, we have got not only the change of
9 the BAK, the Purite with the BAK, but we have a lowering of
10 the amount of active ingredient, the brimonidine?

11 A. Correct.

12 Q. Now, if we could compare the number in allergic
13 conjunctivitis between Alphagan P, which would be the first
14 column, and brimonidine .2 percent with the Purite, which
15 would be the second column, and then the original Alphagan,
16 what is it we see here, Dr. Tanna?

17 A. What we see -- we see three numbers that give us an
18 idea of the incidence of allergic conjunctivitis, that
19 particular adverse event, in the three formulations, with
20 the three formulations.

21 Q. What we see is that, with formulation No. 1, what
22 would turn into Alphagan P, we see an incidence of 9.2
23 percent?

24 A. Correct.

25 Q. And brimonidine-Purite .2 percent, we see an incidence

Tanna - cross

1 of allergic conjunctivitis of 14.6 percent?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. And then with the original Alphagan, we see an
4 incidence of allergic conjunctivitis of 15.7 percent?

5 A. That's correct.

6 Q. Thank you.

7 Would you agree that as a physician, or
8 physicians as a whole, especially those that have
9 specialties, that you are sophisticated consumers when it
10 comes to what drugs you are going to prescribe to your
11 patients?

12 A. Not exactly. I mean, I like to think that I am, that
13 I critically review the literature. But I don't think
14 everybody responds to the literature the same way. I think
15 that a lot of clinicians rely on marketing materials to make
16 clinical decisions, unfortunately, when it comes to
17 pharmaceuticals.

18 Q. Specialists like you, for example, Dr. Tanna?

19 A. Well, when you say like me, do you mean somewhat in an
20 academic institution?

21 Q. How about BAK, somewhat in an academic medical
22 institution would tend to look beyond simple flashy
23 marketing material?

24 A. Correct, I think, for the most part, that is true.

25 Q. And certainly someone, for example, who has a

Tanna - cross

1 subspeciality in ophthalmology, that subspeciality being
2 glaucoma, would want to focus in on the glaucoma medications
3 that are being offered for treatment?

4 THE COURT: What do you mean? I don't
5 understand.

6 MS. BROOKS: I apologize, Your Honor, that was
7 really vague.

8 BY MS. BROOKS:

9 Q. Dr. Tanna, as a specialist in the subspecialty field
10 of glaucoma, would one want to look deeper than just
11 marketing material to determine whether or not you would
12 want to prescribe a particular drug?

13 A. I think I can safely speak for myself. I can say
14 that, as an academic ophthalmologist responsible for
15 teaching residents and medical students, that I don't rely
16 on marketing materials. In fact, I try not to look at
17 marketing materials, to the extent possible, in order to
18 make my decisions in order to understand what's out there
19 and what the product characteristics are.

20 I like to rely on peer-reviewed literature.

21 Q. Now, you originally prescribed Alphagan, did you not?

22 A. I did.

23 Q. And then I believe you told us on direct examination
24 that, at some point, Allergan withdrew Alphagan from the
25 market. Is that correct?

Tanna - cross

1 A. That is correct.

2 Q. And then, for those patients whom you wished to keep
3 on brimonidine, you began prescribing Alphagan P?

4 A. Because there was no choice. Correct.

5 Q. When you say "because there was no choice," there was
6 certainly still Alphagan available at the pharmacies for a
7 period of time after Allergan withdrew Alphagan from the
8 market. Correct?

9 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection. Calls for
10 speculation.

11 THE COURT: Overruled.

12 BY MS. BROOKS:

13 Q. If you know, sir.

14 A. My recollection is it was not very long at all. I
15 don't think there were huge supplies that were available
16 that were being exhausted. There were supplies available in
17 pharmacies. But I think they shriveled away pretty quickly.

18 Q. And then, for a period of time, Allergan withdrew
19 Alphagan from the market in August of 2002. Is that
20 correct?

21 A. I don't recall the month.

22 Q. Would you accept that in June of 2003, less than one
23 year later, generic versions of the original Alphagan were
24 released onto the market?

25 A. I can't verify that in any way, based on my

Tanna - cross

1 recollection of when the generic became available. I would
2 have guessed, had you asked me, that it would have been
3 later than that. But I haven't studied that particular
4 issue and I don't really know the exact date.

5 Q. Would you accept that it might be June of 2003 when
6 the generic of, the original Alphagan came onto the market?

7 A. I don't know that. My thought is the generic
8 brimonidine has not been around that long. So I can't
9 really accept that.

10 Q. You have no way to know one way or another?

11 A. Correct. Because, again, like I said, my sense is it
12 was more recent than that.

13 Q. And certainly once generic, whenever it was, once the
14 generic brimonidine, .2 percent, came onto the market, you,
15 as a physician, were perfectly free to prescribe it.

16 Correct?

17 A. Absolutely, yes.

18 Q. But, in fact, even after the generic Alphagan came on
19 the market in, let's accept for the moment June of 2003, a
20 substantial amount of your prescriptions remained Alphagan
21 P, did they not?

22 A. That's correct.

23 Q. And that has continued to this day?

24 A. A substantial amount of my prescriptions for
25 brimonidine remain Alphagan P.

Tanna - cross

1 Q. As a physician, I assume that, especially a very
2 educated physician, as you are, you would want to make sure
3 that you were prescribing something versus the generic, and
4 branded, because it gave either a better efficacy profile or
5 a better safety profile?

6 A. There should be an advantage.

7 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection. Compound.

8 THE COURT: It is compound. The problem is not
9 whether he will understand the question but whether I can
10 understand the answer to the compound question.

11 MS. BROOKS: Let me break it down.

12 It was done in the disjunctive.

13 THE COURT: It was, now that you mentioned it.

14 MS. BROOKS: I am trying to ask either one.

15 THE COURT: Why don't you rephrase. I got you.

16 BY MS. BROOKS:

17 Q. As an educated physician, Dr. Tanna, you would want to
18 see either a better efficacy profile or a better safety
19 profile for the branded drug if you were going to continue
20 to prescribe that over the generic?

21 A. Yes. I agree with that.

22 MS. BROOKS: Thank you. No further questions.

23 THE COURT: Okay. Redirect.

24 MR. SODIKOFF: Thank you, Your Honor.

25 Your Honor, first off, I would like to apologize

Tanna - redirect

1 on behalf of our group for coming in a little late there.

2 THE COURT: As you noticed, I didn't wait. It's
3 in your interests to be in the seats when I tell you.

4 MR. SODIKOFF: I agree.

5 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

6 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

7 Q. Dr. Tanna, a lot of the cross focused on one of skill
8 in the art according to Dr. Banker's definition. I would
9 just like to look at that again, to make sure we are clear
10 here about whether you're one of skill in the art, and if
11 you are not, whether you are pretty close.

12 If we could put up PTX-602, please. If we can
13 go to Page 7 of this.

14 Dr. Tanna, what was your undergraduate degree
15 in?

16 A. Biology.

17 Q. Did you take courses in chemistry and organic
18 chemistry and similar science-related courses?

19 A. I did.

20 Q. Did you take courses in science during med school?

21 A. Well, medical school is a series of courses that also
22 cover basic science.

23 Q. Are there some that are related to chemistry during
24 med school?

25 A. There is biochemistry, which I had placed out of, in

Tanna - redirect

1 fact.

2 Q. What does it mean that you "placed out of"?

3 THE COURT: Took a test.

4 MR. SODIKOFF: Thank you, Your Honor.

5 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

6 Q. I would like to look at the last sentence here, "If
7 the worker's formal education is not in the pharmaceutical
8 sciences or pharmacology, per se" -- that might be you.

9 Correct? I am sorry.

10 Are you in a related field, such as chemistry?
11 Was your formal -- would you consider your formal education
12 to be in a field that is related to chemistry.

13 THE COURT: Could I see counsel for a moment? I
14 may be able to help you along.

15 (The following took place at sidebar.)

16 THE COURT: If you are making an effort to
17 qualify him as one of skill in the art --

18 MR. SODIKOFF: I am not doing that.

19 THE COURT: You are really swimming upstream on
20 that issue. And I can tell you right now that he has
21 accepted it, by his own testimony. And I will so rule that
22 he is not one skilled in the art.

23 (End of sidebar conference.)

24 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

25 Q. Dr. Tanna, prior to 1999, did you have years of

Tanna - redirect

1 experience in using glaucoma medications?

2 A. Yes, I did.

3 Q. And although you don't consider yourself one of skill
4 in the art, do you interact with those of skill in the art
5 as part of your practice?

6 A. As part of my practice? I wouldn't say as part of my
7 practice.

8 Q. Have you consulted for brand drug manufacturers who
9 are formulating products?

10 A. Yes. But in the process, I don't directly interact
11 with people I would consider of skill in the art. Not
12 directly. It's through intermediaries.

13 Q. Do you feel comfortable testifying about what you
14 would like to see in a medication on the results side?

15 A. Yes, very comfortable.

16 Q. And have you expressed any of those concerns in the
17 past with people from a pharmaceutical company?

18 A. I have.

19 Q. Do you feel comfortable basically understanding what
20 one of skill in the art would look for, at least as to the
21 clinical or the therapeutic effectiveness of a drug?

22 A. I do.

23 Q. Now, if we can look at, I believe it was JTX-044. At
24 the top, if we can highlight under the first recommendation.
25 Dr. Tanna, you have been here for the testimony of, for most

Tanna - redirect

1 of the testimony, I think, of everyone besides the first
2 half of Dr. Whitcup. Is that correct?

3 A. That's correct.

4 Q. Have you seen counsel from Allergan show any of their
5 formulators a publicly available document that showed that
6 there was a concern regarding the stability of brimonidine
7 and the possibility that it would oxidize?

8 A. "Publicly available" meaning something that would be
9 available to somebody outside the company?

10 Q. Yes.

11 A. No, I haven't.

12 Q. Have you reviewed any literature regarding the
13 oxidative stability of brimonidine tartrate?

14 A. I have seen two papers that have dealt with that
15 issue.

16 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, I would like to go to
17 DTX-296, which I think is actually in your booklet, although
18 we didn't mention it earlier.

19 BY MR. SODIKOFF:

20 Q. Dr. Tanna, can you tell me the title of this article?

21 A. "Development and Use of Brimonidine in Treating Acute
22 and Chronic Elevations of Intraocular Pressure: A Review of
23 Safety, Efficacy, Dose Response, and Dosing Studies."

24 Q. When was this article published?

25 A. It was published in November 1996.

Tanna - redirect

1 Q. I would like to look at the second page of this
2 document, S20 on the top left, the first paragraph on the
3 top left, can you read where it starts with "Brimonidine"?

4 A. "Brimonidine is a highly selectively alpha-2-agonist,
5 28 times more selective than Apraclonidine and ten times
6 more selective than Clonidine."

7 Q. What does the next sentence say?

8 A. "Ocular allergy occurs less than with Apraclonidine,
9 which may be related to its oxidative stability."

10 Q. Does this tell you anything about the oxidative
11 stability of brimonidine?

12 A. It suggests that brimonidine is at least more
13 oxidative, more stable in terms of oxidative injury than
14 Apraclonidine.

15 Q. Dr. Tanna, earlier in your testimony, if we can go
16 back to the Derick article, I think it's DTX-111, and if we
17 can go to the table, I am sorry, I don't have it with me,
18 that counsel was referring to, counsel for Allergan, the
19 next page, Table 3, I believe during the cross, you wanted
20 to say something and counsel said you could do it on our
21 time, regarding Table 3 and what you look for, what types of
22 testing that you look for in determining efficacy. You are
23 now on our time.

24 Can you explain what you wanted to say?

25 A. What I wanted to say is that I have personally dealt

Tanna - redirect

1 with putting together a table or two like this in a paper.

2 I know that there is a drawback to doing this,
3 that is, that you can sort of pick any percent threshold
4 that you want and keep trying things until something works,
5 which is why, when we did it, we weren't looking at the
6 data, and my co-author and I decided ahead of time what
7 threshold we were going to use. And it was only one number,
8 if I remember correctly.

9 So analyses like this one, to me, are suspect.
10 This is not the way I like to judge efficacy of a drug. I
11 like to see the mean, either percent reduction in IOP or the
12 mean antiocular pressures and standard deviations. And,
13 here, we just don't have the robust quality of data to make
14 meaningful conclusions.

15 Q. If we can look at this entire page. Just look at the
16 chart on the top right.

17 I would actually like to go back to DTX-296 as a
18 side, dual column.

19 I will just go into this because I think it's a
20 better picture of the graph. I think we will see it's the
21 same one.

22 Q. It's Page S 23 at the top. If you could blow that
23 graph up?

24 Dr. Tanna, do these look like -- would you agree
25 with me that this is the same data being presented in these

Tanna - redirect

1 different articles but similar graphs?

2 A. It's the same data, but the abscissa is different in
3 terms of the range presented. So the graph looks different,
4 but it's the same data. I know that from having read both
5 papers.

6 Q. Actually, in DTX-296, if we go to the previous page,
7 S 22, under "Dose Response Study," where there is a footnote
8 10, Footnote 10 there, if we go to the references pages,
9 S 25, Footnote 10, that is the Derick article we have been
10 talking about. Correct?

11 A. Correct.

12 Q. If we can go and just look at the chart in this
13 Walters article, DTX-296, at S 23, at the top, and just blow
14 that one up alone?

15 Dr. Tanna, can you mark where the .08 is on
16 there? Can you just identify it?

17 A. Yes. .08 is this line (indicating.)

18 Q. And the .2 percent?

19 A. .2 is this line (indicating). They extend up here as
20 well, but it is harder to distinguish them.

21 Q. If you can erase those.

22 A. (Witness complies.) Do you want me to make them all
23 go away and start over?

24 Q. Yes. Do you see a significant difference in efficacy
25 between the .08 and the, I don't want to say significant,

Tanna - redirect

1 but how would you qualify the difference in the efficacy
2 between the brimonidine .08 percent and the brimonidine .2
3 percent?

4 A. They are similar.

5 Q. And, overall, are the two lines converging as we go
6 further along in time or do they seem to be separating?

7 A. Well, they seem to be converging. But I don't think
8 that we can really extrapolate beyond this time duration. I
9 don't think that that would be reasonable.

10 Q. You would want to see a clinical study to actually
11 extend this time period for three months or a year?

12 A. Right. I think what we can say is that the paper
13 tells us that there is no statistically significant
14 difference between those two, because it does report a
15 statistically significant difference between the .08 and the
16 .5, I believe. But there is no statistically significant
17 difference in this graph with the data that are represented
18 in this graph between the .08 and the .2.

19 Q. If we can move to JTX-003, Figure 1. Can you mark on
20 here where .08 percent brimonidine tartrate would be, along
21 the y axis.

22 A. (Witness complies.)

23 Q. Now, counsel, during the cross-examination, was
24 suggesting that therapeutically effective concentrations of
25 brimonidine tartrate would not be soluble at a pH that is

Tanna - redirect

1 similar to the pH of the eye.

2 The pH of the eye is what?

3 A. The relevant pH of the tear film in the tears, that is
4 the relevant pH, and it's 7.4.

5 Q. Here, and according to the Derick article, which said
6 there was a therapeutic effective amount at .08, would that
7 be soluble at 7.4, just looking at this chart?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. I would like to just move on briefly to the marketing.

10 Counsel was talking about ophthalmologists and
11 that a subspecialty within ophthalmology is glaucoma
12 treatment people. Is that correct?

13 A. Glaucoma is a subspecialty within ophthalmology.

14 Q. Do ophthalmologists, themselves, treat some patients
15 with glaucoma?

16 A. The vast majority of patients in the United States who
17 have glaucoma are treated by general ophthalmologists.

18 Q. Is it fair to conclude from that that the vast
19 majority of prescriptions are written by general
20 ophthalmologists?

21 A. Yes, that is a fact.

22 Q. What is your opinion regarding, if you have one,
23 regarding whether or not general ophthalmologists focus too
24 much on marketing materials?

25 A. I read an interesting article recently that stated

Tanna - redirect

1 that, among the specialties, ophthalmologists are the ones
2 most likely to use branded products and to not use generics.

3 I think that that is because of our
4 susceptibility of being a specialty and because of the skill
5 of the marketing that is directed toward us.

6 Q. Finally, Dr. Tanna, the original -- the generic form
7 of the original Alphagan is not AB-rated to the Alphagan P
8 .15 percent. Is that correct?

9 A. That's correct, which, as I understand it, means that
10 the pharmacist dispensing the product cannot substitute
11 Alphagan P as equivalent to Alphagan original formulation.

12 MR. SODIKOFF: Thank you. No further questions.

13 THE COURT: All right, Doctor. Thank you.

14 (Witness excused.)

15 MS. BROOKS: Your Honor, Allergan will call as
16 its next witness Joe Schultz, and Mr. Marsden will be doing
17 the examination.

18 THE COURT: Just give me a second. I will be
19 right back.

20 MR. BREISBLATT: Your Honor, may Dr. Tanna be
21 excused?

22 THE COURT: I have excused him.

23 (Pause.)

24 THE COURT: Let's get the witness on the stand.

25 MR. MARSDEN: Thank you, Your Honor.

Tanna - redirect

1 Allergan calls Joe Schultz.

2 JOSEPH SCHULTZ, having been duly

3 sworn as a witness, was examined and testified as
4 follows ...

5 MR. MARSDEN: Your Honor, may I approach to give
6 Mr. Schultz his binder?

7 THE COURT: Yes, Mr. Marsden.

8 MR. MARSDEN: I have binders for the Court as
9 well.

10 Your Honor, since we had a brief break in our
11 case to accommodate Dr. Tanna, may I give a very brief
12 transition statement?

13 THE COURT: Yes.

14 MR. MARSDEN: We are calling Mr. Schultz to
15 shift back to the commercialization of the inventions and
16 how the Alphagan P products have been received in the
17 marketplace. We are specifically going to focus on what
18 happened when Alphagan P original formulation was
19 introduced, what happened when generics came on the market,
20 and then what happened when Alphagan P .1 percent came on
21 the market.

22 DIRECT EXAMINATION

23 BY MR. MARSDEN:

24 Q. Good afternoon, Mr. Schultz.

25 A. Good afternoon.

Schultz - direct

1 Q. Could you introduce yourself to the Court, please?

2 A. Yes, my name is Joseph Schultz.

3 Q. Where do you work, Mr. Schultz?

4 A. I work at Allergan.

5 Q. What is your position at Allergan?

6 A. I am the senior vice president of the U.S. eye care
7 business at Allergan.

8 Q. How long have you been at Allergan?

9 A. Approximately five years.

10 Q. What did you do before that?

11 A. I worked in the pharmaceutical industry about for 20
12 years, the previous 13 years at Johnson & Johnson.

13 Q. Could you briefly describe your educational background
14 for the Court?

15 A. Yes. I have an undergraduate degree in biology from
16 Elizabethtown College in Pennsylvania and a Master's in
17 business administration from Fordham University in
18 Manhattan.

19 Q. What are your responsibilities as the senior vice
20 president of U.S. eye care for Allergan?

21 A. I am responsible for oversight of the commercial
22 operations for the U.S. eye care business. I have sales and
23 marketing reporting into me.

24 Q. How many products does Allergan sell in your business?

25 A. Allergan has a very broad portfolio of ophthalmic

Schultz - direct

1 products. We have been in the ophthalmic business for over
2 60 years. So we have a large heritage of products.

3 But, most recently, we support usually eight to
4 ten products of our newer products in the portfolio.

5 Q. Do you have an understanding of what products are at
6 issue in this case?

7 A. I do.

8 Q. What is your understanding?

9 A. Alphagan and Alphagan P .15 and .1.

10 Q. What is Alphagan?

11 A. Alphagan is brimonidine. It is an IOP lowering drug
12 for glaucoma patients.

13 Q. Is Alphagan still offered in the marketplace by
14 Allergan?

15 A. Alphagan .2 percent is not.

16 Q. Were there any problems with Alphagan?

17 A. When you look back at the history, Alphagan was a
18 relatively successful product in the market. But from --

19 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, objection. This
20 witness didn't join Allergan in 2004 and is testifying to
21 facts about which he has no personal experience.

22 MR. MARSDEN: Your Honor, I can lay a
23 foundation, if you would like.

24 BY MR. MARSDEN:

25 Q. When you joined the company, did you become familiar

Schultz - direct

1 with its product line and the history of that product line?

2 A. I did.

3 Q. In the course of that, did you learn whether there had
4 been any problems with the Alphagan product when it was on
5 the market?

6 A. Yes.

7 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection. Again, this is a fact
8 witness, not an expert witness. He has no personal
9 experience with what happened prior to his joining the
10 company.

11 THE COURT: If the experience is based upon
12 admissible evidence, would you agree, such as business
13 records?

14 MR. SODIKOFF: If the witness identifies the
15 information he is relying on.

16 THE COURT: Could you have him do that,
17 Mr. Marsden.

18 MR. MARSDEN: Certainly, Your Honor.

19 BY MR. MARSDEN:

20 Q. Mr. Schultz, when you joined the company, how did you
21 familiarize yourself with the Allergan product line?

22 A. Honestly, it is the responsibility of me to learn the
23 products, the portfolio, so a number of ways. Obviously,
24 looking back at some of the research around the products,
25 also, speaking to the clinicians who have used our products

Schultz - direct

1 over the years, which I do on an ongoing basis today as
2 well. Even as of today, clinicians will talk about some of
3 the challenges they had with the original Alphagan.

4 Q. What were some of those challenges?

5 A. The main challenge that they faced --

6 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor.

7 (The following took place at sidebar.)

8 THE COURT: You heard the objection.

9 MR. MARSDEN: Yes.

10 THE COURT: What is your response?

11 MR. MARSDEN: We anticipated the objection, Your
12 Honor. This is an exception to the hearsay rule. The state
13 of mind of the customers and their motivation towards
14 changing to the new drug.

15 THE COURT: Overruled.

16 (End of sidebar conference.)

17 BY MR. MARSDEN:

18 Q. I will pose a new question, Mr. Schultz, so we don't
19 lose time reading it back.

20 What were the problems with Alphagan that you
21 learned from your investigation into the products of
22 Allergan?

23 A. The main concern the physicians usually voiced in the
24 research and also -- was the tolerability profile of the
25 product, particularly as it related to ocular allergy as

Schultz - direct

1 well as some of the other smaller, more nuisance side
2 effects.

3 Q. What is Alphagan P?

4 A. Alphagan P is a newer formulation of brimonidine that
5 included either a .15 or a .1 percent of concentration of
6 drug. And that product provided not only the same -- both
7 products provided not only the same level of efficacy of the
8 original .2 percent but improved the tolerability profile.

9 Q. When was Alphagan .15 percent first introduced?

10 A. That would have been in August 2001.

11 Q. When was Alphagan .1 percent introduced?

12 A. That would have been February 2006.

13 Q. In your experience, in your job at Allergan, has
14 Alphagan P been a successful drug?

15 A. Yes. It's a very successful product, not only from
16 the company's perspective, but within the branded glaucoma
17 market, it is one of the most successful products in the
18 market.

19 Q. What were the sales of Alphagan P last year?

20 A. Approximately \$240 million.

21 Q. Now, other than the sales dollars, how else do you
22 quantify the success of a drug at Allergan?

23 A. We look at a number of metrics. We look at
24 prescription trends, both total prescriptions as well as new
25 prescription trends over time. We look at those relative to

Schultz - direct

1 competitors' prescription trends as it relates to market
2 share of prescriptions.

3 Q. Now, in your role as the senior vice president of U.S.
4 eye care, do you subscribe to and receive market data
5 regarding prescription rates?

6 A. Yes, we do, on both a weekly and monthly basis.

7 Q. Let me ask you to turn to PTX-249, which should be in
8 the binder that is in front of you.

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. We have it up on the screen as well. It's a little
11 hard to read.

12 Can you describe generally what we are looking
13 at?

14 A. Yes. This would be a typical report of ongoing
15 prescription trends. This one happens to be for the total
16 glaucoma market. It is for total prescriptions, or TRx's,
17 and it outlines not only what the total market trends were
18 on a month-by-month basis from, it appears, November 1993
19 through 2000 -- early 2006. Then it also shows those same
20 trends by some of the major categories and some of the major
21 products within those categories.

22 Q. And we know this is the total glaucoma market because
23 we can see that up in the upper left-hand corner. Is that
24 correct?

25 A. That is correct. So, for the month of November, 1993,

Schultz - direct

1 the total glaucoma market was about 1.2 million
2 prescriptions for that month.

3 Q. We can see that by reading along the rows. Is that
4 right?

5 A. That's correct. And as you move to the right, it
6 gives each additional month worth of data.

7 Q. Total market appears at Row 8?

8 A. The total market does appear at Row 8, that's correct.

9 Q. Before we leave this first page, what is TRx, TR small
10 X?

11 A. TRx stands for total prescription trends. That would
12 include new prescriptions or new pieces of paper that a
13 physician pens a new prescription, either because the
14 patient is new or the refills have run out and they have to
15 write a new prescription. It includes both the refills as
16 well as any new prescriptions.

17 Q. Do you sometimes also receive market data just on new
18 prescriptions?

19 A. We do.

20 Q. We will come back to that in a moment. If we can stay
21 on Page 1 for a moment. Does this report also report
22 prescriptions for Alphagan?

23 A. Yes, it does. Alphagan would appear, it appears to be
24 Line 21.

25 Q. Does it report sales of Alphagan P?

Schultz - direct

1 A. Yes. That would be on Line 22.

2 Q. Does it report sales of generic brimonidine?

3 A. It does, on Line 23.

4 Q. Staying on this first page just a little bit longer,
5 where did these figures come from?

6 A. These figures, the sources on the document are from
7 Verispan, which is one of the several third-party
8 independent audits that are available to industry or to
9 anyone who is going to purchase them.

10 Q. Mr. Exline, if we could back out and show that at the
11 bottom of the page, in the lower left-hand corner.

12 Is that what you are referring to?

13 A. That's correct. Verispan is the name of the company
14 and VONA is the actual name of the audit itself.

15 Q. Is that data available to other companies in the
16 industry as well?

17 A. It is.

18 Q. Can you remind us, again, what was the launch date of
19 Alphagan P?

20 A. Alphagan P was launched in August 2001.

21 Q. Can you turn in Exhibit PTX-249 to August, 2001, and
22 show us where we see the first sales of Alphagan P?

23 A. That would appear to be on Page 11. You can see if
24 you follow across Line 22, the first prescriptions are
25 marked in August of 119 prescriptions.

Schultz - direct

1 Q. And before we follow what happened when Alphagan P
2 came on the market, what was the total market for glaucoma
3 prescriptions in August of 2001?

4 A. It was approximately 1.8 million prescriptions per
5 month.

6 Q. Where do you get that number from?

7 A. The very top, it would be Row 8.

8 Q. And if you look to the very end of this chart, what
9 was the total market in April of 2006?

10 A. Approximately 1.8 million prescriptions as well.

11 Q. So there wasn't much change in the total market, then,
12 during that period?

13 A. No, it is a relatively slow changing and slow growth
14 market.

15 Q. Now, what did you observe in the marketplace when
16 Alphagan P came on the market?

17 A. Well, what you can see, if you look at Row 22, as it
18 moves across, that, relatively quickly, Alphagan P
19 prescriptions grew month over month. At the same time, that
20 was very much at the expense of Alphagan, which was
21 declining at the same time.

22 Q. So, is it correct that Alphagan and Alphagan P were
23 both on the market for a period of time after Alphagan P was
24 launched?

25 A. That's correct, for approximately a year.

Schultz - direct

1 Q. And when did Alphagan cease selling Alphagan?

2 A. That would have been August 2002.

3 Q. So, for the period of roughly August, 2001, to August,
4 2002, Allergan was selling both Alphagan and Alphagan P.

5 A. That's correct.

6 Q. Have you prepared a demonstrative to show what
7 happened to the relative prescription rates of the two drugs
8 during that period?

9 A. Yes, there is a demonstrative.

10 Q. Could we pull up ADX-16, please.

11 What does this show, Mr. Schultz?

12 A. This graphically depicts, on a monthly basis, the data
13 that is included in this report. And you can see the launch
14 of Alphagan P at the beginning of the chart, obviously it
15 started at zero prescriptions, and as it increased very,
16 very rapidly, that was very much at the expense of Alphagan
17 .2 percent. And by the time we got out to that the
18 July-August time frame, the prescriptions for TRx's were
19 approximately split 50-50.

20 Q. Where did the data come from that you used to make up
21 this chart?

22 A. This data, once again, is Verispan data and it's the
23 same data that is included in the report that we discussed.

24 Q. Do you have an understanding of why you saw this
25 phenomenon in the marketplace when Alphagan P came on the

Schultz - direct

1 market?

2 A. It was very clear --

3 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection. Foundation.

4 THE COURT: Overruled.

5 THE WITNESS: It was very clear, from the
6 research that, as we have already discussed, the biggest
7 issue physicians had with base Alphagan was that it had a
8 relatively high allergy rate. And Alphagan P had the
9 promise of a lower allergy rate due to the lower
10 concentration, but, at the same time, provided the same
11 clinical effect, the same level of efficacy.

12 So what it was to the physicians was a solution
13 to the challenge they faced with Alphagan, they very quickly
14 adopted it, got experience with it, found a very good
15 response, and continued to prescribe Alphagan P over
16 Alphagan.

17 Q. Now, I think you testified earlier that PTX-249, from
18 which this graph was created, was total prescriptions.
19 Correct?

20 A. That's correct.

21 Q. But you do sometimes also look at new prescriptions?

22 A. We do. They often are a leading indicator of what is
23 happening, because as physicians are writing new
24 prescriptions, it is weeding out those TRx's which are just
25 being refilled and it shows actually what physicians are

Schultz - direct

1 doing as they are writing out a paper for the patient to
2 pick up a new prescription.

3 Q. If you could turn in your book to JTX-90. What is
4 JTX-90?

5 A. This is new prescription data that looks at a
6 three-month period of time, May 2002 to July 2002.
7 Specifically looking at just the new prescriptions for
8 Alphagan P versus Alphagan or base Alphagan. What it shows
9 is how rapidly physicians were changing their prescribing to
10 Alphagan P despite the fact that base Alphagan was still
11 available.

12 So, from the month of May, 2002, it was already
13 43 percent. Within two months, it jumped to over 55
14 percent. Once again, a leading indicator for physicians'
15 preference of Alphagan P.

16 Q. What was the source of data in this chart?

17 A. This is, once again, a Verispan audit. It is not the
18 VONA database or the Scott Levy (phonetic) database. But
19 Verispan Company has several databases that track that type
20 of information.

21 Q. We have seen the increase in the market share of
22 Alphagan P when it came in the market during the time when
23 Alphagan was still in the marketplace.

24 Did Allergan have a marketing launch when
25 Alphagan P came on the market?

Schultz - direct

1 A. Yes, of course we did, to educate physicians around
2 this new product. Obviously, from an education and a
3 commercial perspective, knowing that their history and their
4 concerns with Alphagan were the allergy, the fact that we
5 could provide a new product that significantly reviewed that
6 adverse event, but, at the same time, provided the same
7 level of efficacy that they were confident in and
8 appreciated, was an opportunity to, No. 1, reengage some
9 clinicians who may not have used the product or had used it
10 and had bad experiences with allergy, and also to reengage
11 physicians who had been using the product and show them that
12 this product could have significant utility in their
13 products that they have available to treat glaucoma.

14 Q. Well, isn't this increase in sales just a reflection
15 of the marketing campaign that you have?

16 A. I don't think it's just the level of communication and
17 marketing. We deal with a very, you know, educated customer
18 base. These individuals, very often, are skeptical of new
19 products, are skeptical of just marketing messages, and
20 often want to evaluate a product and use it for themselves.
21 So if the product didn't deliver on the promise, our
22 customers would not have had a lot of reason to feel that
23 they saw the benefit of Alphagan P and switch patients to
24 Alphagan P.

25 Q. Now, in addition to tracking this prescription data in

Schultz - direct

1 the regular course of your duties at Allergan, do you
2 conduct market research?

3 A. We do, on an ongoing basis.

4 Q. Was market research conducted at the time Alphagan P
5 was launched?

6 A. Yes, it was.

7 Q. And are you familiar with that research?

8 A. I am.

9 Q. What did that research show?

10 A. There were a number of things that were being looked
11 at, trying to really assess physicians' knowledge and
12 attitudes of Alphagan versus Alphagan P, what their
13 experience was and what their thoughts were around the
14 product.

15 Specifically, what came back is that, as we had
16 already known, physicians' concerns with base Alphagan was
17 the level of allergy and adverse events, that their
18 experience with Alphagan P was very, very positive, and
19 their feedback was that they really didn't need both
20 products. That only Alphagan P was their main preferred
21 product and they felt needed to be available.

22 Q. So what did Allergan do?

23 A. Allergan, with that information, decided to remove
24 Alphagan from the market, stop the sales and marketing of
25 the product and put all our energies and efforts into

Schultz - direct

1 **Alphagan P.**

2 Q. And that was August of 2002?

3 A. That was in August of 2002.

4 Q. Now, when Allergan stopped selling Alphagan in August
5 of 2002, were any generic Alphagan products on the market?

6 A. They were not.

7 Q. When were the first .2 percent generic brimonidine
8 products sold in the marketplace?

9 A. I believe it was June of 2003.

10 Q. If you can return to PTX-249 that we looked at
11 earlier. Can you look at June 2003 to see if it confirms
12 that there were sales of generic brimonidine as of that
13 date?

14 A. Yes. You can see on Line 23 the first noted
15 prescription for generic .2 percent brimonidine.

16 Q. But there was a period of time, you would agree, from
17 August of 2002 until June 2003 when Alphagan P was the only
18 brimonidine drug available on the marketplace?

19 THE COURT: Mr. Marsden, is that August '01 or
20 August '02?

21 MR. MARSDEN: August '02 is when the Alphagan
22 product was no longer sold by Allergan.

23 THE WITNESS: So, yes. Between August '02 and
24 this time frame, there was not a brimonidine .2 percent
25 product available on the market, that's correct.

Schultz - direct

1 BY MR. MARSDEN:

2 Q. Didn't that mean that doctors were forced to convert
3 their patients from Alphagan to Alphagan P during that
4 period?

5 A. No. Doctors were not forced to convert. Doctors
6 needed to make a decision on what they wanted to prescribe
7 for their patients.

8 The timing would have required any patient who
9 went to fill a prescription for Alphagan a re-consult with
10 the physician, whether it be a phone call from the pharmacy
11 or discussion with the physician to make a decision what
12 they wanted to prescribe.

13 During that period of time, there, obviously,
14 were a whole slew of glaucoma medications that they could
15 choose from. The prostaglandin analogs were very heavily
16 being discussed at that point, since two were just launched
17 earlier that year. There were a number of other products,
18 obviously, Alphagan P was available, Cosopt, Trusopt, and
19 Azopt, generic timolol, branded timolols. So the whole
20 potential portfolio of products were available to physicians
21 when they were needing to make a change for those patients
22 from the product they were on, Alphagan was no longer
23 available.

24 Q. Now I want to shift your focus to the second area that
25 I told the Judge we would talk about, which is what happened

Schultz - direct

1 when the generic Alphagan products came on the market in
2 June 2003.

3 What did you observe in the marketplace at that
4 time?

5 A. Well, as the generics came onto the market, you can
6 see, actually, if you track across the prescription data,
7 there was kind of a slow, somewhat steady uptake of the
8 generic. And then, after a period of time, the generic
9 flattened out and did not make anymore progress in its gains
10 in market share or prescriptions.

11 Q. You can see that in the data that we started looking
12 at, at Page 13 of PTX-249. Is that correct?

13 A. That's correct. If you follow it month by month
14 across in that Line 23, you can see that it gradually gets
15 gains and then levels out somewhere around the, say, 25,000
16 prescriptions per month by the time this data is complete in
17 2006.

18 Q. Have you prepared a demonstrative exhibit to show the
19 change in prescriptions of Alphagan P when generic .2
20 percent brimonidine was introduced?

21 A. Yes. There was a graphic depiction of the data.

22 Q. Could we pull up ADX-8, please.

23 Is this that demonstrative?

24 A. That is. Once again, you can see from the launch of
25 the generic on the red line, or the generics, I should say,

Schultz - direct

1 because there were several, that it had a relatively slow
2 uptake, flattened out, and the general trend was toward the
3 ten to 15 percent range, about 12 percent, the most recent
4 data that I looked at. And you can see that it had a
5 relatively minor impact on the -- on branded Alphagan P.

6 Q. Once again, where did the figures come from that were
7 used to draw this demonstrative?

8 A. This data is, once again, from the same data source we
9 just looked at, the Verispan, VONA audit.

10 Q. Just so we are clear, that data picks up starting in
11 June of 2003 on the left-hand side. Correct?

12 A. That's correct.

13 Q. And that is when the generic brimonidine products
14 first came on the market?

15 A. That's when they first came to the market, that's
16 correct.

17 Q. Now, during your experience at Allergan, have you seen
18 generics come onto the market?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Is this what you normally see when a generic comes
21 onto the market?

22 A. No. Very often, generics can cannibalize a brand
23 very, very quickly, within several months. If you look at
24 some of the historical models, 70, 80 percent. The most
25 recent product, Cosopt, was taken over by the generic within

Schultz - direct

1 about 70 to 80 percent, within five to six weeks.

2 Q. Just so we are clear here, does the Alphagan P that is
3 shown here include both the .15 and the .1 concentrations?

4 A. It does. It's the entire Alphagan P family. Alphagan
5 P, though, launched just at the very end of that chart in
6 February '06. So only the very end of that chart would
7 include the Alphagan P .1 percent.

8 Q. Do you have any understanding from your work at
9 Allergan as to why the Alphagan P product was not taken over
10 by the generic here?

11 A. Well, it was very clear, from all the research that we
12 did at the time and what we have done now, is that
13 physicians saw extreme benefits of Alphagan P over base
14 Alphagan. So they saw the same level of efficacy that they
15 expected and enjoyed with the .2 percent, but they saw an
16 improved tolerability profile.

17 So the value of the product, in physicians'
18 minds, was significantly higher, and by going to the generic
19 .2 percent, that was like going backwards. So most
20 physicians looked forward in using newer, more advanced
21 technologies, which is not going backwards. And this is, in
22 fact, a backwards step for many of their patients.

23 Q. Today, how many generic brimonidine products are there
24 on the marketplace?

25 A. There are approximately five or six.

Schultz - direct

1 Q. When these companies came on the market with their
2 generic brimonidine, did they have marketing campaigns.

3 A. Yes. In particular, Bausch & Lomb, and Alcon, with
4 their Falcon brand, promoted and had marketing efforts,
5 again, pharmacies, samples in physicians' offices,
6 et cetera.

7 Q. If we just look at the top line, Alphagan P, it
8 actually looks like it is declining slightly over time. Is
9 that correct?

10 A. That's correct.

11 Q. How do you account for that?

12 A. Some of the impact is from by the share that the
13 generic did take. Although small, obviously, it did take it
14 from some of the brimonidine business. Also, this chart
15 really only depicts a very simple single dynamic going on in
16 the market at the time, it is the generic brimonidine versus
17 Alphagan. But there are many other things going on in the
18 market.

19 As I mentioned earlier, just earlier in the same
20 year, 2003, two prostaglandin analogs were launched, one by
21 Alcon and one by Allergan. And prostaglandin analogs had,
22 to some extent, become the standard of care or the first
23 line therapy of choice. So they were having a big impact on
24 the market in general. As patients were being moved to what
25 were a new class of more effective drugs which were more

Schultz - direct

1 convenient, with once daily dosing, were more potent in
2 lowering IOP, and, in some cases, could move patients from a
3 multiple drug to a single drug.

4 So all the dynamics are going on in the
5 background here. And despite all those specific dynamics,
6 Alphagan P did very, very well commercially in the market
7 and continues today to maintain its position as the number
8 one adjunctive therapy available in the market today, it is
9 a branded product.

10 Q. You said "adjunctive therapy." What did you mean by
11 that?

12 A. As I mentioned, the prostaglandin analogs have kind of
13 become the standard of care. So they are usually the first
14 line therapy. It is what most patients are put on in their
15 initial therapy. When the physician is not getting the
16 effect they need, they are not getting enough pressure
17 lowering the effect with one drug, they will add a second
18 drug, and that second or third drug they add is called an
19 adjunctive drug.

20 Q. What is Alphagan P's role in the adjunctive market?

21 A. Alphagan P is primarily used as an adjunctive. And it
22 is the leading branded adjunctive in the market today.

23 Q. This chart we have up here only goes to April of 2006.
24 Do you have any more recent data?

25 A. Yes. We have data on an ongoing basis. And there is

Schultz - direct

1 more recent data in some of the exhibits.

2 Q. If we can look at PTX-617. If we first look just at
3 the cover of this, please.

4 What are we looking at here?

5 A. This is glaucoma, once again, prescription data. This
6 happens to be weekly versus the previous data we looked at,
7 which is monthly. As I mentioned, we get data both weekly
8 and monthly. This is for the glaucoma market. Once again,
9 it is from Verispan, one of Verispan's other audits that
10 tracks the prescriptions on a weekly basis.

11 Q. If you turn to the second page, what period of time is
12 covered by this particular report?

13 A. This report looks like it's from October 2007 through
14 November 9th, 2007, on a weekly basis.

15 Q. What does this report show with respect to the share
16 of the market that Alphagan P and the generic brimonidine
17 products were obtaining?

18 A. Well, whether you look at the NRx data, or the new
19 prescription data, or the TRx data, and I will refer to the
20 NRx data on the left up there, you can see that even back
21 into November of 2007, from the new prescriptions, Alphagan
22 P was generating about 17,000 new prescriptions a week
23 versus the generic, only about 2400.

24 Obviously, the ratio there is somewhere in that
25 ten to 15 percent, the generic has gotten an Alphagan P

Schultz - direct

1 maintaining the lion's share, about 85 to 90 percent of the
2 prescriptions on a weekly basis.

3 Q. So we are clear, can you highlight the line where it
4 says "Alphagan P." Then also the line where it says
5 "generic brimonidine, .2 percent."

6 A. (Witness complies.)

7 Q. Once again, Mr. Schultz, what does that show?

8 A. It shows that even out here at November, 2007, that
9 Alphagan P continued to maintain dominant share versus the
10 generic brimonidine, about 85 to 90 percent of the NRx's,
11 and the same trend was true of the TRx's.

12 Q. If we could just turn to the next page to confirm
13 that. Is this the TRx's?

14 A. Yes. That is the TRx trend, and you can see November
15 9, 2007, once again, that the majority, 47,000, continued to
16 remain with Alphagan P. Despite the availability of the
17 generics, multiple generics, they had gained only about
18 6,000. You can see, from week to week there, they are
19 relatively flat in that six to 7,000 range.

20 Q. Have you seen any significant change in this since the
21 time of these reports?

22 A. No. The most recent data I have looked at is the same
23 trend. It was about 12-and-a-half percent share in the most
24 recent data that I looked at.

25 Q. Let's turn to the third topic that I told Judge Sleet

Schultz - direct

1 we would address, that is, what happened when the Alphagan P
2 .1 percent product came on the market?

3 Once again, when was that product launched?

4 A. That product launched in February 2006.

5 Q. How have prescriptions for Alphagan P .15 percent been
6 affected by the launch of Alphagan P .1 percent?

7 A. In the trend, that was very similar to what happened
8 to the .2 percent when the .15 was launched. So, over time,
9 there has been a steady and relatively rapid increase in the
10 .1 percent NRx's and TRx's, much of that at the expense of
11 the .15.

12 Q. And is there a graph in PTX-617 that we have been
13 looking at that shows that trend? If I could direct you to
14 Page 6.

15 A. Yes, there is. As you can see on this graphic, since
16 the launch in February of 2006 of Alphagan P .1, which is
17 the lower line, you can see the steady upward growth as
18 physicians have now shown their preference for the P .1
19 percent at the expense of the P .15 percent.

20 Q. Do you have any knowledge or understanding, based on
21 your work at Allergan, as to why physicians have switched
22 their patients from the .15 to the .1 percent formulation?

23 A. Yes. What physicians have told us both in research as
24 well as what physicians have told me in dialogue, in
25 conversations with them, is that the ability to maintain the

Schultz - direct

1 clinical effect at .1 percent, which is now half of the
2 original Alphagan that was at .2, and a further reduction to
3 the .15, is something they are very excited about.

4 Actually, that is probably what they were most skeptical
5 about. But the clinical data that we used to develop the
6 product and submit it to the FDA showed equivalent efficacy
7 of .1 and .2, and their own experience has borne that out.

8 But now with the .1 percent, lower than the .15
9 and lower than the .2, they offered the opportunity to use
10 the lowest effective commercialized dose. Based on their
11 experience with the .15, their feeling is that the lowest
12 effective dose minimizes the risk of any adverse events,
13 whether it be allergy or some of the nuisance events as well
14 that were seen with brimonidine.

15 Q. This, again, only goes through October of '07. Has
16 the trend that is shown here continued?

17 A. That trend has continued, and, in the most recent
18 data, the new prescriptions are about 50-50.

19 Q. Has Alphagan P .1 percent been a successful product
20 for Allergan?

21 A. It has been.

22 MR. MARSDEN: No further questions, Your Honor.

23 THE COURT: Thank you, Mr. Marsden.

24 Mr. Boggs.

25 MR. BOGGS: Thank you, Your Honor.

Schultz - cross

1 CROSS-EXAMINATION

2 BY MR. BOGGS:

3 Q. Good afternoon, Mr. Schultz.

4 A. Good afternoon, Mr. Boggs.

5 Q. Mr. Schultz, have you read any of the patents that are
6 involved in this lawsuit?

7 A. I have not.

8 Q. What is the marketing budget for Alphagan P .15
9 percent at Allergan?

10 A. Today?

11 Q. Yes.

12 A. It is approximately two to three million dollars.

13 Q. What was it last year?

14 A. Probably about three to four million dollars.

15 Q. The year before that?

16 A. I am going to say about the same.

17 Q. The marketing budget has gone down. Right?

18 A. It's -- we prioritize our investments. So all of our
19 marketing budgets have gone down.

20 Q. Has the marketing budget for the .1 percent gone down?

21 A. We don't look at it, first one concentration then the
22 other. The budgets are for Alphagan. The majority of all
23 of the marketing has been on the .1 percent since the launch
24 of the product in 2006.

25 Q. It is true, isn't it, that the commercial success of

Schultz - cross

1 Alphagan P is highly responsive, highly responsive to the
2 product's field selling efforts? Right?

3 A. Most of our products have some impact from the
4 promotional efforts. That's absolutely true. As we educate
5 physicians, then it really relies on their personal
6 experience to determine whether the product will be
7 successful.

8 Q. My words were "highly responsive." The commercial
9 success of Alphagan P is highly responsive to the product
10 field's selling efforts. Correct?

11 A. Clearly, our representatives in front of clinicians,
12 talking about the data, particularly when the new
13 formulations came out, educating them on the new data, is
14 going to garner their attention and an opportunity for us to
15 dialogue with them about the benefits of the product, and if
16 we are discussing a benefit that was of interest to them,
17 that will have an impact on their interest in evaluating a
18 product, absolutely.

19 Q. Is that a yes?

20 A. That is a yes.

21 Q. Now, I have a question for you. If we added a third
22 line to that chart and it was generic .15 percent
23 brimonidine, how do you think that line would look?

24 A. I think it would have responded as an interactive
25 generic and it would have eroded the market. But as we

Schultz - cross

1 know, these two are not the same product.

2 Q. That's right.

3 A. That's correct.

4 Q. In fact, generic .2 percent brimonidine is not
5 substitutable for Alphagan P at the pharmacy. Right?

6 A. That's correct, just as Alphagan P was not
7 substitutable for base Alphagan at the pharmacy.

8 Q. It's against the law?

9 A. Pharmacists would need a physician's directive to
10 change the prescription, that's correct.

11 Q. That's right.

12 If there was a generic .15 percent, the
13 pharmacist could substitute. Right?

14 A. Yes, that would be true.

15 Q. And that line would go up and this line would go down.
16 Right?

17 A. Theoretically, yes, from experience and analogs in the
18 market.

19 Q. What is this graph supposed to show?

20 A. This graph just shows that despite the entry and
21 promotion of .2 percent brimonidine, that physicians were
22 not willing to switch back, and, frankly, managed care plans
23 continued to allow Alphagan P to be available on the plan
24 because they saw differences between Alphagan P and the .2
25 percent brimonidine, the clinical differences, which were

Schultz - cross

1 lower allergy, but yet maintaining the same level of
2 efficacy.

3 Q. Do you recognize what this document is?

4 A. Yes. I saw this during the deposition.

5 Q. This is an Allergan press release. Right?

6 A. That's correct.

7 Q. This is where they are applauding the fact that .2
8 percent is not substitutable for Alphagan P. Correct?

9 A. I don't know if they are applauding the fact. They
10 are stating the fact.

11 Q. And they are telling their shareholders that Alphagan
12 P continues to have FDA marketing exclusivity. Right?

13 A. And they continue to point out that Alphagan P has
14 some advantages over Alphagan. That's correct.

15 Q. How meaningful is this slide? Does this tell us
16 anything real?

17 A. I think it does. I think physicians had the option at
18 the point of any time along that curve, and even prior to
19 that curve, to change prescriptions from Alphagan P to
20 something else. And even in light of a generic .2 percent,
21 managed care's ferocious movement with generics, that they
22 did not see these products as the same product. They saw
23 Alphagan P as a superior product with an improved
24 tolerability profile versus .2 percent brimonidine.

25 Q. There is a well-known phenomena out there that

Schultz - cross

1 physicians routinely prescribe the brand name drug.

2 Correct?

3 A. I don't know if that is a well-known phenomena. I
4 think there are many physicians who also prescribe generics.
5 I have not seen any data of the percent of physicians who
6 write something in a generic form versus a brand name form.

7 Q. When you are out there talking to these doctors that
8 you talked about during your direct examination, talking to
9 them and getting their ideas, did you ever talk to them and
10 ask them, Do you normally write the prescription for the
11 brand name or do you normally write it for the generic?

12 A. I think physicians do a lot of different things.
13 That's physician specific.

14 Q. I think so.

15 When I go to the doctor, he writes my
16 prescription, he always writes the brand?

17 A. And my doctor writes the generic. There is two ends
18 of one that are different.

19 Q. How many factors affect this chart, other than the
20 doctor's choice?

21 A. During this period of time, there was a heavy
22 promotion both to managed care, and managed care can swing a
23 heavy arm and remove products, like branded products from
24 formulary, and will push them to a very high tier, tier 3
25 and 4, which tends to pull out pocket from the patients.

Schultz - cross

1 And that will often stimulate physicians or patients to look
2 for alternate options. And ultimate managed care front,
3 and, frankly, with the physician front, they saw the
4 benefits of Alphagan P versus Alphagan, engineered
5 brimonidine in this case.

6 Q. You think, with this chart, this shows physician's
7 choice? I think it's because the pharmacist can't
8 substitute generic drugs.

9 Are there any other factors we ought to take
10 into account?

11 A. No. I think, as you said, this demonstrates
12 physician's acceptance and belief that Alphagan P is a
13 better product than .2 percent brimonidine.

14 Q. Just so we are clear, I didn't say that. That's what
15 you said?

16 A. That is correct.

17 Q. I said it's the fact that the pharmacist can't
18 substitute?

19 MR. MARSDEN: Objection, Your Honor. Mr. Boggs
20 is not here to testify.

21 THE COURT: Sustained.

22 MR. BOGGS: I will withdraw it, Your Honor.

23 BY MR. BOGGS:

24 Q. So, what do you spend your marketing budget on?

25 A. It depends on the product, where it is in the

Schultz - cross

1 lifecycle and what are the important programs. A lot of our
2 budgets are spent on educational programs, peer to peer
3 programs in particular. Those are very valuable when you
4 have an opportunity to educate physicians around something
5 new, like, for instance, Alphagan P when it launched, from
6 physicians who had experience with it to physicians who have
7 not had experience with it, to share their experiences.

8 We also spent some on advertising, some on
9 sampling. Those are probably some of the main areas.

10 Q. How much do you spend -- how much did you spend last
11 year on free sampling?

12 A. I don't know that number specifically.

13 Q. It's in the millions. Right?

14 A. For Alphagan?

15 Q. Alphagan P.

16 A. No.

17 Q. No?

18 A. No. We only had about a \$3 million budget.

19 Q. 750,000, maybe?

20 A. Probably less than a million.

21 Q. Less than a million. More than a half a million?

22 A. Yes, probably somewhere in that range.

23 Q. A half-million dollars in free samples. Do the
24 generics do that?

25 A. At the time of the launch of these generics, both

Schultz - cross

1 Bausch & Lomb and Falcon, Alcon's generic division, had
2 samples available to physicians.

3 Q. That wasn't for a true generic of Alphagan P?

4 A. That's correct. Even though those samples were there,
5 physicians voted with their prescription pad to prescribe
6 Alphagan P in light of those generics being available, both
7 as samples and in the market.

8 Q. After receiving \$500,000 worth of free samples?

9 A. And I am not sure what B and L and Alcon may have
10 provided but they could have provided the same or more.

11 Q. Now, it's true, correct, that .15 percent and 0.1
12 percent Alphagan P have similar side effect profiles.

13 Right?

14 A. They have similar side effect profiles, that is
15 correct.

16 Q. So there is really not any significant difference
17 between those two in terms of safety. Right?

18 A. Not from the package insert statement, which is a
19 binded package insert which brings all the data together,
20 that is correct.

21 Q. Now, with regard to that chart that Mr. Marsden showed
22 that showed the sales of Alphagan P .15 and Alphagan P .1
23 converging, what's the understood reason for that?

24 A. As I mentioned previously, physicians see the same
25 level of efficacy that they saw with .2 and .15. But they

Schultz - cross

1 feel that the lowest effective commercialized dose is the
2 best to give the patient and has the best chance of avoiding
3 any issues.

4 In most cases, with glaucoma patients, the
5 patients are going to be on these drugs long term. And the
6 eye care professionals are looking to avoid adverse events
7 and concerns over time while patients are being treated.

8 Q. And it's very -- I will withdraw that.

9
10 MR. BOGGS: I have no further questions, Your
11 Honor.

12 THE COURT: All right.

13 MR. BREISBLATT: Your Honor, Mr. Benson will be
14 handling the cross-examination.

15 THE COURT: Mr. Benson.

16 MR. BENSON: Thank you, Your Honor. Good
17 afternoon, Your Honor.

18 THE COURT: Good afternoon.

19 BY MR. BENSON:

20 Q. Good afternoon, Mr. Schultz.

21 A. Good afternoon.

22 Q. I would like to take you to an exhibit that has been
23 put before you by counsel for Allergan. That is PTX-249.

24 A. Okay.

25 Q. Could you remind me very briefly what this, what the

Schultz - cross

1 numbers are in these various columns that are being
2 represented?

3 A. This is audit data that shows on a monthly basis total
4 prescriptions in the glaucoma market, and then it breaks it
5 down by key categories and by some of the major brands.

6 Q. And Row 21, that is Alphagan. Correct?

7 A. Row 21 is Alphagan, that's correct.

8 Q. And, just so I am clear, Row 22 is Alphagan P?

9 A. That's correct.

10 Q. And you indicated that Alphagan P came on the market
11 in, let me just follow along here, according to this, it
12 looks like probably late August 2001?

13 A. August, 2001, that's correct.

14 Q. Now, just prior, if we go to Allergan 0905766, and I
15 would like to look at the total unit sales for Alphagan on
16 July of 2001. Please let me know when you have found that
17 portion.

18 A. July of 2001 and Alphagan, Row 21?

19 Q. Yes, that's correct.

20 A. That would be 250,000 prescriptions, approximately,
21 249,748.

22 Q. Okay. Now, let's look at July 2004. And that's at
23 Allergan 0905770.

24 A. Yes, I have it.

25 Q. And it looks like there is some residual Alphagan

Schultz - cross

1 sales. What is that?

2 A. You know, the audit continues to capture
3 prescriptions. It may be things being written as
4 brimonidine. We continue to see ticking of small numbers of
5 sales allocated to Alphagan. Obviously, with no product
6 there, I am not quite sure what that is. It may be product
7 being written as brimonidine .2 percent, captured in the
8 audit that way.

9 Q. This information is not -- there is a certain amount
10 of error --

11 A. Plus or minus a few percent, that's correct.

12 Q. Where is the -- is that a number that you just made
13 up or is that --

14 A. It is what I understand over the years, the audit is
15 just that, it's an audit. It is not a census. It is a
16 projection, methodology, based on, you know, usually
17 capturing data to a certain extent and then projecting it
18 outward. And different audits have different levels of
19 error. But they are very, relatively accurate.

20 Q. Okay. So what is the -- what was the unit volume sale
21 of Alphagan P in July of 2004?

22 A. Alphagan P in July of 2004, that would be -- let me
23 make sure I have the right line here in the report -- Line
24 22, 215,000 prescriptions for the month.

25 Q. That is less than 250,000. Correct?

Schultz - cross

1 A. That's correct.

2 Q. And if we go now to April of 2006, which is at
3 Allergan 0905772. What is the unit sale for April 2006 of
4 Alphagan P?

5 A. It's about 180,000 prescriptions.

6 Q. That is less than 250,000. Correct?

7 A. That's correct.

8 Q. Now, I would like to take you back to ADX-16. It was
9 an exhibit that -- could I have ADX-16?

10 Now, could you tell me briefly the number on the
11 y axis? What are those numbers?

12 A. Those are the monthly prescriptions.

13 Q. So, again, these are unit sales?

14 A. They are not unit sales. They are prescriptions.

15 Q. Actual prescriptions?

16 A. TRx's, total prescriptions.

17 Q. Okay. Now, this August '02 is the date Allergan quit
18 distributing Alphagan. Is that correct?

19 A. That's correct.

20 Q. Now, Allergan told physicians it was pulling Alphagan
21 prior to doing so. Correct?

22 A. Yes. We notified physicians that we would be focusing
23 our efforts on Alphagan P.

24 Q. And, so, if we are looking at ADX-16, physicians knew
25 at this time that Alphagan was no longer going to be

Schultz - cross

1 available?

2 A. It was communicated to them publicly that Alphagan was
3 no longer going to be available, that's correct.

4 Q. When you launched Alphagan P, did you tell physicians
5 that Alphagan P was better than Alphagan?

6 A. We provided them the clinical data, and, as I already
7 mentioned, these are fairly savvy individuals, they are
8 well-educated, and, with their experience, they came back
9 and told us that it was a superior product.

10 We did point out that, in the clinical data, not
11 only did we have the same level of efficacy with a reduction
12 in the drug, but there was also an advantage in the clinical
13 data on a reduction in allergy.

14 MR. BENSON: Your Honor, may I approach the
15 Bench?

16 THE COURT: Yes.

17 BY MR. BENSON:

18 Q. Now, I have handed you a document that has been marked
19 as DTX-192. And this is a memo from a Hans Peter Pfleger.
20 Are you familiar with this gentleman?

21 A. I am.

22 Q. Is he a marketing person at Allergan?

23 A. He is in the global strategic marketing group.

24 Q. Do you oversee that group?

25 A. No, I do not.

Schultz - cross

1 Q. Do you have any association with that group at all?

2 A. Not directly, no.

3 Q. Do you interact with that group?

4 A. On occasion, yes.

5 Q. Now, I would like to take you to the second page of
6 this document, and there is, at the second bullet point, I
7 would like to direct you to the second sentence of that
8 first paragraph.

9 So, isn't it true that ophthalmologists
10 generally have a low rate of switching from a branded to a
11 generic product?

12 A. I am not sure if that was true in 1997. It's not true
13 today. That may have been true back when this memo was
14 written, but I can tell you, from the experience that we
15 have had internal at Allergan, and even the example of
16 Cosopt that I mentioned earlier, clearly, that is not true
17 today.

18 Q. I would like to go back to ADX-16. Now, when you
19 launched Alphagan P, you were telling physicians that
20 Alphagan was better -- or Alphagan P was better than
21 Alphagan. Correct?

22 A. We were communicating to them the clinical data which
23 showed of some of the advantages, addressing the concerns
24 that they had with Alphagan, that's correct.

25 Q. You were telling customers, physicians, in this case,

Schultz - cross

1 that Alphagan P was better than Alphagan because it replaced
2 the preservative benzoalkonium chloride with Purite.

3 Correct?

4 A. We were communicating to them that the lower
5 concentration was a distinct advantage and that the new
6 formulation had some other changes, including a BAK removed
7 and replaced with Purite as the preservative.

8 Q. And you were telling customers Alphagan P was better
9 because it included electrolytes corresponding with
10 electrolytes found in the human eye. Correct?

11 A. I believe some of the marketing materials did talk
12 about the formulation changes at that time.

13 Q. And as you indicated earlier, you told customers that
14 clinical trials showed that Alphagan P was better than
15 Alphagan. Correct?

16 A. We demonstrated that the clinical effect, the efficacy
17 was equivalent with a reduction in the rate of allergy.

18 Q. And the rate --

19 A. So the word "better" is a very broad statement. What
20 we specifically communicated is what was within the clinical
21 data that we were able to communicate. And that would have
22 been reflected in our promotional materials.

23 Q. Did some of that clinical data relate to tolerability?

24 A. Yes, it did, as it relates to allergy in particular.

25 Q. Mr. Schultz, I have handed you a document identified

Schultz - cross

1 as Defendants' Trial Exhibit 151. This is an e-mail
2 document from Hans Peter Pflieger, who was identified
3 earlier.

4 THE COURT: 155 or 151?

5 MR. BENSON: I apologize. DTX-155.

6 BY MR. BENSON:

7 Q. Now, I would like to take you to, do you see there are
8 numbers on the lower right? These are Bates numbers. It
9 says Allergan-EX. I would like to take you to EX 0620759.
10 If you could just flip through, starting there and just kind
11 of flip through really quickly some of the pages here. This
12 appears to be a draft of a scientific report intended for
13 publication, doesn't it?

14 A. Yes, it does.

15 Q. Okay. And if you look, it says here, right underneath
16 the title -- first of all, let's look at the title. This is
17 a three-month comparison of efficacy and safety of
18 brimonidine-Purite 0.15 percent and brimonidine 0.2 percent
19 in patients with glaucoma or ocular hypertension previously
20 on brimonidine 0.2 percent monotherapy.

21 Did I read that correctly?

22 A. Yes, you did.

23 Q. And it says here, "Author, TBD."

24 Now, wouldn't you agree with me that "TBD" is to
25 be determined?

Schultz - cross

1 A. Yes, I would assume that.

2 Q. So, at this time -- and at the bottom, this study was
3 supported by Allergan. Correct?

4 A. That's what it appears to say, yes.

5 Q. So, apparently, this advanced draft had not yet had an
6 author identified with it. Correct?

7 A. It would appear that way.

8 Q. I would like to take you back to the very first page
9 of this document. If you look down, there seems to be a
10 second message attached to this one. I would like to
11 highlight that section. It says here, "Attached please find
12 the 3B manuscripts for your review and comment."

13 Underneath, it says, "Please note, per the last
14 start com meeting, we have asked Tom Mundorf to author."

15 MR. MARSDEN: Your Honor, may I interpose an
16 objection. I don't think this is proper cross-examination.
17 There has been no foundation that this witness has seen this
18 document before. In fact, it's from three years before he
19 joined the company.

20 MR. BENSON: Your Honor, the witness has
21 testified that in marketing the materials, that they
22 provided --

23 THE COURT: Why don't you establish that he is
24 familiar with this document.

25 MR. BENSON: Okay.

Schultz - cross

1 BY MR. BENSON:

2 Q. Mr. Schultz, have you seen this document before?

3 A. I have not.

4 Q. Now, you indicated earlier that when you began work at
5 Allergan, that you investigated the research efforts, the
6 marketing, and other issues relating to the launch of
7 Alphagan P. Is that correct?

8 A. Market research and other historical data. As I
9 mentioned, the strategic global marketing group doesn't
10 report to me. So my team, nor the people that report to me,
11 would be involved with anything that relates to manuscripts.
12 That is outside the sales and marketing organization. It is
13 over in the global and strategic marketing group.

14 Q. Do these individuals provide you with copies of these
15 types of documents?

16 A. No. I have not seen these documents. This would not
17 be circulated within my team.

18 Q. Clinical studies that were sponsored by Allergan
19 wouldn't be provided to you?

20 A. In this stage, where they are being, still being
21 authored in manuscript, et cetera, this would be handled by
22 the strategic marketing group.

23 Q. Now, are you familiar with any of these journals that
24 are described?

25 A. Yes.

Schultz - cross

1 Q. Advances in Therapy, Journal of Ocular Pharmacology
2 and Therapeutics and Clinical Therapeutics. Do you have any
3 familiarity at all with how Allergan conducts its clinical
4 trials?

5 A. A little bit, yes.

6 Q. Do you have input as to how -- let me rephrase that.

7 Does your department ever have input into areas
8 that you would like Allergan to investigate to support your
9 marketing activities?

10 A. From a Phase 3 or Phase 3 type manuscript where that
11 falls within R&D, no. For phase 4 type studies, we may meet
12 on occasion with our medical affairs department who conducts
13 those studies, talk about what sort of data needs might be,
14 what we are hearing from clinicians, and they would
15 determine what would be done and what designs and protocols
16 would be completed during any specific year.

17 Q. Would you be surprised to learn that marketing
18 personnel at Alphagan were providing substitute input in
19 scientific journals?

20 A. I wasn't at the company at this point in time. I
21 don't know what the protocol was then. I can tell you what
22 it is now.

23 So the global strategic marketing group is
24 involved from a strategic communications perspective. And
25 it's one of the reasons they don't report in my

Schultz - cross

1 organization. They are somewhat separate from the
2 day-to-day commercial operation. They are looking at a
3 horizon. They are working closer with R&D and the R&D
4 portfolio products, so they tend to manage that, versus my
5 team and my responsibility handles the day-to-day commercial
6 operations, the sales and marketing products that are
7 currently on the market and available to sell and promote.

8 Q. Isn't there an ethical issue involved, if scientists
9 are not writing their own journal articles?

10 A. You know, there have been a lot of debates around the
11 authors of articles and how that is done, et cetera. For
12 this specific article, I don't know. A lot of what I
13 understand inside Allergan, for most of our selections, who
14 the lead investigator of who enrolled the most patients is
15 usually the lead author.

16 Q. So, you have an understanding of how Allergan
17 identifies lead authors on their papers. Is that correct?

18 A. As I understand that, from a policy, that generally we
19 go with a lead investigator and/or someone who has enrolled
20 the most patients.

21 Q. Is this consistent, if you see here, where it says,
22 "Please note, per the last start com meeting, we have asked
23 Tom Mundorf to author," is that consistent with Allergan's
24 policy of identifying authors?

25 A. It may or may not be. Dr. Mundorf may have been the

Schultz - cross

1 lead investigator of enrollment in this trial. I don't know
2 the answer to that. He is an ophthalmologist. I know he
3 has done clinical work and published before for Allergan in
4 terms of the clinical data. He has also done a lot of work
5 on his own and with others. I don't know specifically, as
6 it relates to this data set, why Dr. Mundorf's name is on
7 here. I would suspect it was because he was one of the top
8 enrollers in this clinical study or one of the individuals
9 who helped design and helped the protocol.

10 Q. Do you see on the e-mail message whether or not
11 Mr. Mundorf is identified as the recipient of any of these,
12 this document?

13 A. This looks like an internal document, so I am not
14 sure -- Dr. Mundorf would probably have received this under
15 separate cover and be asked to review the manuscript as well
16 at the same time.

17 Q. On the basis of the information -- I apologize.

18 A. And may have been involved before this memo. Once
19 again, this memo is out of context for me. Once again, I do
20 know Dr. Mundorf has published quite a bit in the
21 ophthalmology journals.

22 Q. Mr. Hans Peter Pflieger, is he typically identified as
23 an author on publications that you provide to physicians
24 relating to clinical trials or the clinical experience of
25 any Allergan product?

Schultz - cross

1 A. Not that I am aware of.

2 Q. Can you recollect at any time Mr. Pfleger being
3 identified as an author on one of those documents?

4 A. Not that I am aware of, no.

5 Q. Is Mr. Pfleger a physician?

6 A. No. He is, as I said, in the global strategic
7 marketing group.

8 Q. Okay. If you go up to the top of this document, if
9 Mr. Pfleger was --

10 MR. MARSDEN: Your Honor, I think we are now
11 well beyond anything this witness is knowledgeable about.

12 THE COURT: That objection is sustained.

13 BY MR. BENSON:

14 Q. One final thing. Alphagan P and Alphagan were being
15 sold at the same time. Correct?

16 A. Correct, for approximately one year.

17 Q. And a physician would distinguish the two when writing
18 a prescription by writing a "P" on the prescription,
19 correct? So Alphagan P as opposed to Alphagan. Correct?

20 A. That was one way to distinguish. They also could have
21 written brimonidine .15 percent. There was more than one
22 way than just writing "P."

23 Q. And Allergan, at the time, informed physicians the
24 necessity of using P or the brimonidine 0.15 percent
25 designation when filling out prescriptions. Correct?

Schultz - cross

1 A. Yes. If they wanted to ensure the patient got the new
2 improved formulation, they needed to make some designation
3 to avoid confusion and/or callbacks from the pharmacy.

4 MR. BENSON: I have no further questions, Your
5 Honor.

6 MR. MARSDEN: No redirect, Your Honor.

7 THE COURT: Mr. Schultz, let's take our
8 afternoon break.

9 (Recess taken.)

10 THE COURT: All right, counsel. Please take
11 your seats.

12 MS. BROOKS: Your Honor, we are going to move to
13 the '078 patent, which we haven't addressed yet. That is
14 the Purite patent. Mr. Singer will be doing the direct
15 examination of Mr. Anthony Dziabo.

16 MR. SINGER: Good afternoon, Your Honor. We
17 call Anthony Dziabo to the stand.

18 ANTHONY J. DZIABO, JR., having been duly sworn
19 as a witness, was examined and testified as follows ...

20 DIRECT EXAMINATION

21 MR. SINGER: May I approach the witness and the
22 Bench to hand out the witness binders?

23 THE COURT: Yes.

24 BY MR. SINGER:

25 Q. Good afternoon, Mr. Dziabo.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. Good afternoon.

2 Q. Thank you for coming today.

3 First things first, I don't want to embarrass
4 you. I understand you have a hearing problem. Is that
5 correct?

6 A. That's correct.

7 Q. Unfortunately, is it your left ear. Is that right?

8 A. It's my right ear, the ear that's facing the Judge.

9 Q. You and I both speak loud, you and I won't have a
10 problem, but I wanted to alert the clerk.

11 Mr. Dziabo, where are you currently employed?

12 A. I am currently employed by a company called Prima
13 Pharm, Inc. out in California.

14 Q. What is your position there?

15 A. I am president of the company.

16 Q. What does Prima Pharm do?

17 A. We are a contract manufacturer of drugs,
18 pharmaceuticals, medical devices, clinical supplies, and
19 also proprietary products.

20 Q. Does that company do business with Allergan?

21 A. We have in the past but not in the recent five years.

22 Q. Are you being compensated for your time here today?

23 A. Yes, I am.

24 Q. How much?

25 A. \$300 an hour.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. Is that your normal consulting rate?

2 A. Yes, it is.

3 Q. Do you have any monetary stake in the outcome of this
4 case?

5 A. Other than a few shares of Allergan stock, no.

6 Q. Mr. Dziabo, could you describe your technical
7 educational background for the Court, please?

8 A. Certainly. I have a B.A. degree in chemistry from
9 Mansfield University in Mansfield, Pennsylvania. I did
10 graduate work in chemistry at Indiana University of
11 Pennsylvania in Indiana, Pennsylvania, not in the state of
12 Indiana. I also did graduate work in chemistry at Cleveland
13 State University in Cleveland, Ohio.

14 Q. Did you earn any advanced degrees?

15 A. I did earn an advanced degree, an MBA from Pepperdine
16 University in Malibu, California.

17 Q. When did you earn that?

18 A. 1984.

19 Q. Before working at Prima Pharm, where were you
20 employed?

21 A. I was employed with Medtronic Cardiopulmonary in
22 Anaheim, California.

23 Q. What years was that?

24 A. That was 1997 through mid-2000.

25 Q. And before working at Medtronic, where were you

Dzaiabo - direct

1 employed?

2 A. I was employed at Allergan, Inc.

3 Q. How long were you at Allergan?

4 A. I was at Allergan from 1983 until 1996.

5 Q. Did your job at Allergan include responsibilities in
6 the antimicrobial field?

7 A. They did.

8 Q. Before Allergan, where were you employed?

9 A. Before Allergan, I was employed by the State Chemical
10 Manufacturing Company in Cleveland, Ohio, and Florence,
11 California.

12 Q. How would you describe your involvement in ophthalmic
13 products since leaving Allergan?

14 A. Sporadic at best, here and there. Probably much less
15 than five percent of my total.

16 Q. Thank you, Mr. Dziabo.

17 Now, did your job at State Chemical involve
18 responsibilities in the antimicrobial field?

19 A. They did.

20 Q. What types of products were you involved with at State
21 Chemical?

22 A. State Chemical basically manufactured institutional
23 and industrial products. This was a wide variety of
24 different products, including such disparate things as
25 cleaners, degreasers, paints, coatings, floor polishes, hard

Dzaiabo - direct

1 surface disinfectants, water treatment products, and a host
2 of other things.

3 Q. You mentioned the term "disinfectant," which I think
4 everyone in this room has probably used a disinfectant.
5 What did you mean by "disinfectant"?

6 A. Disinfectant is a system or substance which affects a
7 very quick kill, almost as an event.

8 Q. Is there an amount of kill that it does?

9 A. The amount of kill in a disinfectant, you are
10 basically looking for practically total kill. Practically,
11 that usually doesn't happen. So we are talking about kill
12 in the range of 99.999 percent.

13 Q. Have you worked with other classes of antimicrobial
14 compounds?

15 A. Yes, I have.

16 Q. Have you worked with preservatives?

17 A. Yes, I have.

18 Q. How can you contrast a preservative with a
19 disinfectant?

20 A. As I mentioned before, a disinfectant is typically a
21 very aggressive, very powerful type of process which works
22 over a very short period of time, an event, if you will.

23 A preservative is a process wherein you are
24 trying to prevent biological degradation. In the case of
25 ophthalmics, this would mean biological degradation and

Dzaiabo - direct

1 contamination of the ophthalmic products.

2 That particular process is much less aggressive,
3 and it also has a sustained action over a long period of
4 time.

5 Q. Let's break that down a bit.

6 Do preservatives kill microbes or bacteria?

7 A. They do, but at a very different rate.

8 Q. You mentioned a period of time. How long a period of
9 time are we talking about?

10 A. It depends on the useful, practical life of the
11 product, the intended product. In the case of ophthalmic
12 products, the practical life span is in the neighborhood of
13 two years.

14 Q. Did you become familiar with your work with other
15 classes of antimicrobials?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Have you brought with you a demonstrative today, just
18 so we can keep this terminology straight?

19 A. Yes, I have.

20 Q. May I have ADX-18 on the screen.

21 Is that that demonstrative, Mr. Dziabo?

22 A. Yes, it is.

23 Q. Okay. Just to keep the terminology straight for the
24 day, we have at the top, something called a sterilant. What
25 was the a sterilant in your experience?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. A sterilant is a system or substance which will
2 absolutely, positively, to a very high degree of assurance,
3 wipe out all microbes on the given target.

4 Q. The second bullet is "point in time activity." What
5 did you mean there?

6 A. Again, that is the event, means that it in a very
7 short period of time. The quicker the better.

8 Q. You have, as an example, the use of surgical tools.
9 What did you mean by that?

10 A. Surgical instruments would mean, for instance,
11 something where you would absolutely want to have the
12 highest level of assurance that there were no microbes on
13 that surface to cause subsequent infection in a patient.

14 Q. Makes sense. We have disinfectant. Is that the
15 description you provided before for disinfection?

16 A. Yes, it is. Again, reading bullet point, it
17 substantially kills all the target microbes.

18 Q. We have a new term, "target"? What is target
19 microbes?

20 A. With regards to disinfectant and antimicrobials in
21 general, in many cases, the requirements for testing and
22 substantiating the effect are against a defined panel of
23 organisms.

24 Q. That would be a target organism. Is that right?

25 A. It would be that target organism.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. Then we see "preservative" down there. Is that your
2 description of preservative from before? Is there anything
3 notable you wanted to add?

4 A. The only thing, again, to emphasize the difference
5 between disinfectant and preservative is that the
6 preservative must have sustained action over a long period
7 of time.

8 Q. Last, at the bottom, what is a bacteriostat, in your
9 experience?

10 A. A bacteriostat is a substance or a system which really
11 doesn't kill any microbes, but it inhibits them from growing
12 and multiplying.

13 Q. Is it used frequently?

14 A. It's used on an event basis frequently because, many
15 times, it gets used up or decays. For example, what we have
16 up here is the sneaker spray.

17 Q. Thank you very much.

18 In your experience, were disinfectants
19 necessarily good preservatives?

20 A. Not generally so, no.

21 Q. Why not?

22 A. The disinfectant, as we discussed just a moment ago,
23 is a very aggressive, very powerful agent or system. You
24 are looking to basically hit the microbes as hard as you
25 can, as quickly as you can, and eliminate substantially all

Dzaiabo - direct

1 of the microbes on the surface.

2 Q. Why would that not necessarily make a good
3 preservative?

4 A. The aggressive nature of the disinfectant could be a
5 problem, especially when you expose those types of agents or
6 systems to, for instance, human tissue, in particular, the
7 tissue and the functionality of the eye.

8 Q. Okay. Do preservatives necessarily make good
9 disinfectants, the flip-side?

10 A. The flip-side, that answer would also be no.

11 Q. Why not?

12 A. Again, the preservative and its activity must be
13 tailored to, in this case, the tissue in which it will
14 contact. The disinfectant necessarily, does not necessarily
15 have to touch the tissue, but the preservative generally
16 does. So, therefore, you now have to take into
17 consideration the effect not only on the microbes but on the
18 target tissues or the tissues that will come in contact with
19 the solution.

20 An example of that would be a sorbic acid, which
21 is a well-known ophthalmic preservative. It would never be
22 able to meet disinfectant criteria.

23 Q. Are there recognized standards for disinfectants and
24 preservatives?

25 A. In the case of ophthalmic products, indeed, there are.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. Where are those found?

2 A. Those are basically the responsibility of the FDA.

3 For instance, for preservatives, the FDA references the USP.

4 Q. What is the USP?

5 A. The USP stands for the United States Pharmacopeia.

6 Q. If you could turn to, you should have a binder in
7 front of you, and you should have what's been marked as
8 Joint Exhibit 79 in front of you. Can you identify that for
9 the Court, please?

10 A. Yes. This is the title page from the 1985 volume of
11 the USP, Volume No. XXI. It also contains the national
12 formulary, the NF, Volume 16.

13 Q. Are there standards for preservative efficacy in this
14 document?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Where are those?

17 A. If you page down, you will come to --

18 Q. There are little references at the bottom.

19 A. Allergan 0979233, please.

20 These are the general chapters in the USP, as
21 you can see, the heading, Microbiological Tests, Chapter 51,
22 this describes the process and the requirements for
23 antimicrobial preservative effectiveness testing in the USP
24 21.

25 Q. Generally speaking, what are those requirements?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. Those requirements, basically, are that the target
2 organisms, the bacteria, are reduced to 99.9 percent in the
3 initial concentration, by the 14th day, and, actually, you
4 can highlight that, it's on the second column, just above
5 Chapter 61, and, so, it's .1 percent in the initial
6 concentration or a total kill of 99.9 percent by the 14th
7 day. And the concentrations of the yeast and the molds
8 remain at or below during the first 14 days and then neither
9 the bacteria nor the yeast nor fungi grow any further until
10 the 28th day.

11 Q. And how is that different from the USP tests for a
12 disinfectant?

13 A. There is not a USP test for disinfection, the, in the
14 case of contact lens care, where we are going to be talking
15 about disinfectant, but there are guidelines published by
16 the FDA that say, here are the standards for disinfection.

17 The FDA will very, when it can, refer to the
18 USP, where possible, where there is a test that covers the
19 particular situation. Where the USP is lacking, it will
20 promulgate its own regulations and standards.

21 Q. My apologies for my mistake. How does that test that
22 we just saw differ, generally speaking, from the
23 disinfectant test you just referenced?

24 A. In the disinfection tests -- I am sorry, I
25 misinterpreted you there -- the disinfection test basically

Dzaiabo - direct

1 requires a kill on a very, very short time frame, usually in
2 the minutes or hours time interval.

3 Q. Thank you.

4 Could you contrast your experience at State
5 Chemical with your experience at Allergan in antimicrobials
6 for the Court?

7 A. Yes. At State Chemical, our business was, as I said,
8 institutional, industrial. We were selling to hospitals,
9 nursing homes, those types of institutions. Their
10 requirements for disinfections were what I will call hard
11 surface disinfections, tabletops, door mats, bannisters,
12 walls, floors, ceilings. Those types of situations.

13 The latitude we had in that situation, sometimes
14 I describe it as, is that tabletops don't scream. So you
15 have the ability to use overwhelming force, if you will, on
16 those inanimate objects. Your only requirement is that you
17 don't dissolve the object that you are trying to work on.
18 You had the ability to bring, like I said, overwhelming
19 force to bear on those particular assignments, if you will,
20 those typical uses.

21 Q. I take it you could not do that in ophthalmics. Is
22 that correct?

23 A. In ophthalmics, you now have a situation where, as we
24 talked about previously, the preservative is more than
25 likely going to find its way into the eye. Obviously, the

Dzaiabo - direct

1 eye is a very, very sensitive organism. The issue you are
2 always dealing with here is one that I call friend versus
3 foe.

4 Most of the preservatives in the marketplace
5 can't tell the difference between a pseudomonas organism,
6 which can cause infection, and the corneal epithelial cell.
7 It works the same on both.

8 So you have a problem in that your formulation
9 must take into consideration the fact that you have to
10 balance, you have a balance point where you have to have
11 enough antimicrobial activity, but you have to also make
12 sure that you have not exceeded the toxicity standard or
13 toxicity requirements for the eye.

14 So, it's a balancing act. It's sort of like a
15 teeter-totter situation between activity and toxicity.

16 Q. Thank you, Mr. Dziabo.

17 Let's talk more specifically about your work
18 experience at Allergan. I think you testified you joined
19 the company in 1983. Is that correct?

20 A. That's correct.

21 Q. What was your first position when you were hired at
22 Allergan?

23 A. I was hired as a formulation scientist in the contact
24 lens, hair product area.

25 Q. We have heard formulation at this trial. Did you work

Dzaiabo - direct

1 on the formulation with active ingredients at Allergan?

2 A. I take it by "active," you mean active pharmaceutical
3 ingredients?

4 Q. Yes, that's what I mean.

5 A. Okay. At that time, no.

6 Q. Did you stay a formulation scientist during your time
7 at Allergan?

8 A. No. I progressed with increasing responsibilities
9 from scientist to managing scientist to managing scientists
10 who managed scientists, to managing different departments,
11 et cetera, until, finally, I was the vice president for R&D
12 of the optical group.

13 Q. Getting to the time frame that is relevant to this
14 case, which is roughly 1983 to 1988 or '89, what was your
15 position then?

16 A. I was a manager of the formulations group.

17 Q. Did you manage a person by the name of Mr. Paul
18 Ripley?

19 A. Yes, I did.

20 Q. Who is Paul Ripley?

21 A. Paul Ripley was a formulation scientist working in the
22 same division as myself.

23 Q. Did he, in fact, start at Allergan on the exact same
24 day you did?

25 A. Yes. In fact, he and I both started on the very same

Dzaiabo - direct

1 day.

2 Q. Did you work closely with Mr. Ripley?

3 A. I did, indeed, work in that time frame very closely
4 with Paul. He reported directly to me.

5 Q. Mr. Ripley and you are the inventors on the patent
6 that Ms. Brooks referred to. Is that correct?

7 A. That is correct.

8 Q. What were your responsibilities in the antimicrobial
9 field at the time you joined Allergan?

10 A. Can I get a glass of water?

11 Q. Absolutely.

12 A. Would you please repeat that last question?

13 Q. Sure. I just am referring you back to the time you
14 started at Allergan in 1983.

15 What were your responsibilities at the time you
16 joined?

17 A. My responsibilities at that point in time were to look
18 for new antimicrobial agents to use in improving our
19 existing contact lens disinfection products.

20 Q. Did you have a particular approach that you were
21 pursuing at that time?

22 A. Yes. What I conceptualized as my approach at that
23 point in time was that the existing products in the
24 marketplace, I felt had one -- had several serious
25 drawbacks. That is these disinfecting agents, these

Dzaiabo - direct

1 powerful chemical agents, all found their way back into the
2 eye, hitching a ride on the contact lens.

3 When a patient wore contact lenses, they would
4 remove the lenses at night and they had to store them in
5 something. And they had to disinfect them because the lens
6 could be contaminated by handling, by the environment. So
7 the next morning, they wanted to have a basically microbe
8 free lens to put back in their eye.

9 The problem was is when you soak those lenses in
10 such a solution, the active agent hitched a ride back into
11 the eye, if you will.

12 Q. What was your idea for solving this kind of problem?

13 A. I wanted to get the active agents out of contact with
14 the eye.

15 Q. What approaches were you pursuing at the time you
16 joined Allergan or after you joined to try to get the agent
17 out of the eye?

18 A. I was looking for chemicals or systems which would, as
19 I characterize it, disappear by the time the lens got into
20 the eye.

21 Q. What do you mean by "disappear"?

22 A. That the agent was either neutralized, it was bound,
23 it was changed in some way so that it did not exhibit the
24 non-discriminate activity, or it had dissipated.

25 Q. Were there particular approaches that you were

Dzaiabo - direct

1 pursuing to make these agents disappear?

2 A. Yes, there was. We had hydrogen peroxide systems, for
3 instance.

4 Q. How did those work?

5 A. Hydrogen peroxide, three percent hydrogen peroxide we
6 were using as a disinfectant, a very powerful antimicrobial
7 agent but you couldn't put it in the eye, it was very toxic.
8 The useful thing about hydrogen peroxide is we had agents
9 that we could add in and destroy the hydrogen peroxide to
10 water and to oxygen, to harm less substances in the eye.
11 That was one approach.

12 The other approach we had, too, is we built upon
13 some previous custom or practice in contact lens wear, which
14 was the heaters.

15 Q. What were you doing with the heaters?

16 A. If I can explain a moment, the heater was basically a
17 way to disinfect a contact lens. Basically, you took the
18 lens out of your eyes, you put them in a lens case with
19 saline, the lens case was put in a little device that was
20 about yeah by yeah, you turn the button and it would heat it
21 up and you basically boiled the lenses. That affected the
22 disinfection.

23 The problem with that was all of the debris on
24 the lens from the tear film, all of the deposits, et cetera,
25 et cetera, got baked onto the lens. And you had this

Dzaiabo - direct

1 lasagne of deposits, layers, in many cases, of deposits on
2 the lens, which, when the patient would put on their eye,
3 would cause conjunctivitis.

4 So heaters were, you know, somewhat suspect.
5 What we did is we adapted the process. We changed the
6 active agent from heat to chlorine gas.

7 Q. How did you go about doing that?

8 A. Well, we used the same saline, because saline has
9 sodium chloride in it, as the tonicity agent. And now,
10 instead of heating it up, we basically ran a current through
11 the saline and it generated chlorine gas. Chlorine gas is
12 a powerful micro biocide. It then completed the
13 disinfection. But the nice thing about that was the
14 chlorine gas is volatile, and it de-gasses out of solution,
15 so we made the antimicrobial disappear.

16 Q. And that was through an approach using a gas. Is that
17 correct?

18 A. That was an approach using a gas, chlorine gas in this
19 case.

20 Q. During the time you were doing this work with gaseous
21 antimicrobial agents, did you learn of a company named
22 Bio-Cide?

23 A. I did, because one of my assignments and one of our
24 approaches was we were casting a very wide net to find all
25 of the different types of antimicrobial agents available

Dzaiabo - direct

1 throughout the world. And I came cross an information
2 packet from Bio-Cide Chemical.

3 Q. I would like to show you in your binder the next tab,
4 it's Joint Exhibit 83.

5 Do you have that, Mr. Dziabo?

6 A. I do.

7 Q. Is this the material you just referred to as coming
8 across from Bio-Cide?

9 A. Yes, this appears to be part of it, yes.

10 Q. Okay. If we could blow up at the bottom of the front
11 page, it says Bio-Cide Chemical Company, doesn't it?

12 A. That's correct.

13 Q. What caught your eye about this patent?

14 A. Several things. If we can go right up to the first
15 line, you can see there, it says, "Chlorine dioxide is a
16 gas."

17 Q. Why did that catch your eye?

18 A. Well, because of the second sentence on there, too,
19 actually, I guess it's the fourth sentence, it says it's
20 very volatile.

21 Q. Why was that important to you?

22 A. Again, like our chlorine gas product, volatile gas
23 meant that it would dissipate from solution and disappear.

24 Q. Was it also a known antimicrobial agent?

25 A. Chlorine dioxide had been known for some time. The

Dzaiabo - direct

1 other thing that attracted us, and myself, to this concept
2 was that chlorine dioxide had been used in water treatments.
3 So there was a great deal in the literature concerning its
4 systemic toxicity.

5 Q. Looking down at the first paragraph, referring your
6 attention to the bottom, what was the approach Bio-Cide was
7 advocating in this patent with respect to utilizing chlorine
8 dioxide gas?

9 A. Well, basically, they represented that they had a
10 stabilized chlorine dioxide product which they could use as
11 a chlorine dioxide generating system.

12 Q. Where do you see that --

13 A. Well, it's in a couple spots there. Down a couple
14 lines.

15 Yes, that's the sentence. That's good.

16 Q. It says, "Several years ago, a method was developed to
17 stabilize the chlorine dioxide gas into an aqueous alkaline
18 solution - thus the term 'stabilized chlorine dioxide'."

19 Is that what you were referring to?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. Where does it say it generators chlorine dioxide gas?
22 At the time bottom there?

23 A. At the very end of the paragraph.

24 Q. If we could highlight the last sentence. What does it
25 say there?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. "The solution is a ClO_2 ," excuse me, sometimes I will
2 say chlorine dioxide, sometimes ClO_2 , but "a chlorine
3 dioxide generating system which produces the chlorine
4 dioxide molecule in a spontaneous manner."

5 Q. The chemical name they gave to this was what?

6 A. The stabilized chlorine dioxide.

7 Q. I want to refer your attention to the top. If we
8 could go to the top of the paragraph, Mr. Exline, you said
9 it was very volatile. But it also says it was explosive at
10 concentrations above ten percent in the air?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Did you have a memorable experience with a gas in your
13 lab about the danger of chlorine dioxide?

14 A. Yeah. In fact, we did. Paul Ripley, who, again,
15 worked on this particular project, when he was early on
16 working with some of the stabilized chlorine dioxide
17 samples, inadvertently released a cloud of the chlorine
18 dioxide gas. And he kind of did it on a bench, he says with
19 a knockout punch. He said he basically staggered, had to
20 get himself fresh air, and had to go sit on a curb for a
21 while until he cleared his head.

22 So, yes, it was a very powerful, aggressive
23 chemical agent.

24 Q. If this gas is so powerful, why were you interested in
25 working with it in ophthalmics?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. Again, I was looking for agents that met the
2 definition of disinfection, that is, is powerful,
3 aggressive, quick-acting. But, also, I could disappear
4 them, if you will.

5 Q. How did you envision using the Bio-Cide product?

6 A. I was thinking about a system in which we could use
7 the stabilized chlorine dioxide, and, on demand, or, at the
8 appropriate point, release the chlorine dioxide, obviously,
9 in much lower quantities than Paul Ripley had in his little
10 incident. And I felt that because of its enormous ability
11 for antimicrobial activity, could affect disinfection in a
12 very quick and thorough manner.

13 Q. What pH does the brochure say the product came with?
14 If I could help you, Mr. Dziabo, I will refer your attention
15 to the second page, first paragraph.

16 A. 073057, Mr. Exline, the first paragraph, can you see
17 it there, at about the fourth sentence? Actually, the fifth
18 sentence, I am sorry.

19 Q. Fifth line?

20 A. Fifth line, I am sorry. Fifth line.

21 Q. If we could highlight the fifth line, "The
22 concentration is maintained at a" --

23 A. A pH of 8.5 to 9.0.

24 Q. Was that a concern for you?

25 A. Yes, it was.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. Why?

2 A. That pH is outside the range of the native pH of the
3 eye.

4 Q. What did Bio-Cide say in this brochure would happen
5 when you dropped the pH?

6 A. That they would, at that point, liberate the chlorine
7 dioxide gas.

8 Q. Did the packet have any data regarding toxicity of the
9 substance?

10 A. It did. Mr. Exline, I think that's back a bit
11 further. Allergan 0730578.

12 Q. What is this, Mr. Dziabo?

13 A. This is a report of a toxicity test that was run on
14 the Purogene, which, my understanding was the brand name for
15 the stabilized chlorine dioxide product from Bio-Cide.

16 Q. In fact, it actually has two brand names in the front
17 of the page. Is that right? It was Purogene and Oxine, if
18 we could just quickly see that on the first page?

19 A. Yes. There were several names that were used in the
20 offering. I believe, I am not sure, but I believe it was
21 because they had different target markets, and, so, Bio-Cide
22 labeled them differently.

23 Q. Let's talk about this toxicity test. It's called a
24 Biological Report of Analysis from the United States
25 Environmental Protection Agency. True?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. That's correct.

2 Q. Okay.

3 A. Excuse me. No. It's on a form approved by the
4 Environmental Protection Agency. This was not done by the
5 Environmental Protection Agency.

6 Q. Thank you for clarifying that. My fault.

7 What does it say the active ingredient in
8 Purogene is?

9 A. On Section 11 there, if we can pop that up, it says
10 chlorine dioxide two percent.

11 Q. Then it provides a test right below that, if we could
12 blow that up?

13 A. Right. If you look at the line that starts with 12,
14 13, and across, there is 14, 15, 16, 17, the type of test
15 was an ocular irritation screen. If you look over at No.
16 14, it is a modified Draize test.

17 Q. What was your understanding as to what a Draize test
18 was?

19 A. A Draize test is typically a test that is required to
20 simply determine what the danger would be to a user if the
21 product was accidentally splashed into the eye.

22 Q. Is this a chronic test like one would use in an
23 ophthalmic product?

24 A. No. That is one of the real shortcomings from this
25 type of data. From an ophthalmic perspective, this is a

Dzaiabo - direct

1 one-time installation. So it is an event, it is not
2 something that gives me any information on the use of a
3 product for many, many months or even years.

4 Q. How relevant to your work at Allergan was this
5 information?

6 A. Not very relevant at all.

7 Q. What do the results say?

8 A. The test basically was two albino rabbits. They put a
9 couple drops into each of the rabbits in the eyes. One of
10 the eyes was washed out, the other was left unwashed. The
11 rabbits are typically, in this type of a test, are watched
12 for seven days to see what happens. In other words, the
13 eyes are examined on a regular basis over seven days. And
14 there is a method for storing the product and its toxicity.

15 As you can see, their conclusion in this
16 laboratory was that the product was only a slight ocular
17 irritant causing mild conjunctivitis in both eyes, the one
18 washed, the one unwashed eyes of the two rabbits tested.

19 Q. Was this a problem for you?

20 A. It caused a lot of concern in that if this was one
21 installation, and, in fact, in one case, it was washed out
22 of the eye, this was a washout for us in terms of toxicity
23 because, in ophthalmic products, we are going to be putting
24 this in peoples' eyes at least on a daily basis.

25 Q. Why did you decide to persist in looking at the

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Purogene product?

2 A. It still had many of the requirements that I had
3 conceptualized for the design of an advanced disinfecting
4 system.

5 Q. This was the gas faced approach you were talking
6 about?

7 A. The disappearing antimicrobial, yes.

8 Q. So what did you do? You read this packet. What did
9 you?

10 A. I, basically, at that point in time, wrote a letter to
11 Bio-Cide.

12 Q. We can pull up a letter for you at PTX-2. What are
13 you requesting in this letter?

14 A. This was a letter where I basically say, I have seen
15 your packet of information. I am interested. And we would
16 like to see some samples, both liquid and -- we would just
17 like to see some samples.

18 Q. What happened after that?

19 A. We received a visit from Mr. Bob Danner.

20 Q. Who is Mr. Bob Danner?

21 A. Bob Danner was then the president of Bio-Cide.

22 Q. Did Mr. Danner come out to Allergan?

23 A. Yes, he did.

24 Q. Did he meet with you?

25 A. Yes, he did.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. Was there anyone else at that meeting?

2 A. I can't exactly recall who all was at that meeting.
3 It's been a while.

4 Q. What do you remember about that meeting?

5 A. I remember about the meeting that Bob was a very
6 polished individual. He was very excited at getting a
7 contact from Allergan. And he was very much in a
8 salesperson mode.

9 Q. What do you mean by that?

10 A. Well, he wanted us to move forward with all haste and
11 with all of our, you know, resources, to put the product,
12 based on his materials, on the marketplace.

13 Q. Understandably.

14 Did he send you the samples that you requested
15 in Plaintiff's Exhibit 2?

16 A. Yes, he did.

17 Q. If you could turn in your notebook to Exhibit 207. If
18 we could put that on the screen. Defendants' 207.

19 Is this a letter you received from Mr. Danner
20 following the meeting?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. Does this enclose a sample of the product?

23 A. Well, he sent it under separate packet, yes.

24 Q. What product is he sending you?

25 A. Well, this was a one thousand part per million of the

Dzaiabo - direct

1 aqueous chlorine dioxide solution, as he characterized it.

2 Q. Why is there a lower concentration than we saw before,
3 the two percent?

4 A. Because during our conversations, we talked about
5 approaches with regards to developing products, and those
6 approaches included things like looking at different
7 concentrations so we could define the antimicrobial activity
8 at different concentrations, we would then subsequently
9 define the toxicity at different concentrations, and,
10 really, learn to understand the physical properties and the
11 performance properties of these antimicrobial agents.

12 And in this case, we talk about, I am sure we
13 talked about the 1,000 ppm, probably due, in large part, to
14 the toxicity data we had seen with the two percent solution
15 previously.

16 Q. The letter at the bottom says there are eye toxicity
17 data included. Do you see that?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. What do you remember about that?

20 A. He did send along additional toxicity data that he had
21 on file at that time that wasn't in the previous packet.

22 Q. Was it the same type of data, the Draize type data
23 that you recall?

24 A. Yes, if I recall, it was Draize testing again.

25 Q. Did you eventually receive the sample?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. Yes, we did.

2 Q. Did you receive other samples from Mr. Danner
3 thereafter?

4 A. Yes, we did.

5 Q. If you could turn to Defendants' Exhibit 189. Do you
6 have that in front of you, Mr. Dziabo?

7 A. Yes, I do.

8 Q. Can you identify this document for the Court?

9 A. Yes. This is a letter from Great Plains Laboratory to
10 myself, talking about the samples that were being prepared.

11 Q. And what concentration are the samples?

12 A. 200, 500, and 1,000 ppm.

13 Q. Drawing your attention to the top line of the letter,
14 it states, "The enclosed samples of Purogene are very near
15 the correct osmolarity, although we have no way to actually
16 measure the actual value for each."

17 What do you understand that to be referring to?

18 A. Well, as part of the conversations we had with Bob
19 Danner, we brought up several points, including the
20 concentration. There were two other main attributes that we
21 were very concerned with, one of which was the pH. You had
22 mentioned earlier, we looked at earlier the fact that the
23 stabilized chlorine dioxide had a pH of 8.5 to 9.0. That
24 would be unsuitable for on ophthalmic product. So we asked
25 him about addressing the pH.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 We also asked about the osmolarity. Osmolarity
2 is a measure of the tonicity or the solute in solution, and
3 that's a basic property of the eye. So, the pH, you want to
4 match up everything with the native eye. You don't want to
5 color outside the lines there, because that can cause
6 problems. So we also talked about tonicity values and
7 samples with the correct tonicity. And this was -- and Bob
8 said, I will have my laboratory prepare those for you, as we
9 discussed and targeted.

10 The other thing that is kind of interesting
11 about this is that the laboratory that he used, which Bob
12 represented as his right-hand man, so to speak, had no way
13 to measure osmolarity.

14 Q. What does that mean?

15 A. They did not own an osmometer.

16 Q. Did that surprise you?

17 A. It did surprise me for somebody who was attempting to
18 work in the ophthalmic area.

19 Q. Did Mr. Danner send you any further toxicity
20 information around this time?

21 A. Yes, he did.

22 Q. Refer your attention to the next exhibit in your
23 packet. It's in there as Defendants' Exhibit 213.

24 Do you have that in front of you, Mr. Dziabo?

25 A. I do.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. Can you identify this letter for me, please?

2 A. This was a memo back from Bob Danner to myself
3 concerning a phone call that we had. I am sure that our
4 discussion here was one of which is, again, toxicity data.
5 And he was informing me that he had recent, the most recent
6 toxicity data on a product called Oxine, which he was going
7 to forward to me.

8 Q. Oxine, that was the same as Purogene?

9 A. My understanding was it was the same fluid, same
10 liquid, different name.

11 Q. I see there is enclosures. It says, Still Meadow
12 Toxicity Studies. Do you see that?

13 A. That's correct, yes.

14 Q. Did you receive those Still Meadow Toxicity Studies?

15 A. Yes, we did.

16 Q. We have marked as Defendants' Exhibit 348 in your
17 binder a document. If you could take a look at it.

18 Is this one of the Still Meadow Toxicity
19 Studies?

20 A. Yes, it is.

21 Q. Is this one of the documents you received from
22 Mr. Danner through Defendants' Exhibit 213?

23 A. Yes, it is.

24 Q. What about kind of information is in this Still Meadow
25 Toxicity Study?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. Well, the best way to digest this is go to,
2 Mr. Exline, if you go to Bio-Cide 0000742, there we are,
3 which talks about the study summary.

4 Q. Is there a particular portion that we should be
5 focusing on, Mr. Dziabo?

6 A. I would like to highlight a couple things.

7 Number one is that this study was conducted with
8 nine rabbits. If you remember, the previous study was with
9 two. That's back in the body a little bit -- actually, it
10 is defined right here, nine albino rabbits.

11 If you go to the third paragraph, basically, the
12 procedure was one-tenth of a milliliter. There are 20 drops
13 in a milliliter, so one-tenth of a milliliter is going to be
14 two drops. So two drops of the undiluted test material was
15 placed into the conjunctiva of, the left eye of each rabbit.
16 Several of the eyes were washed. Several of the eyes were
17 left with the fluid in them. Then the rabbits were observed
18 for seven days.

19 So this, basically, is a repeat of the Draize
20 test that we saw previously with nine rabbits instead of
21 two.

22 Q. How relevant was it to your work at Allergan for
23 optomic products?

24 A. Again, this was destined to give information on
25 accidental exposure, accidental one-time exposure. And it

Dzaiabo - direct

1 was not very relevant with regards to a chronic ophthalmic
2 product which would be used repeatedly over and over again.

3 Q. Again, Oxine and Purogene are one and the same, as far
4 as you understood?

5 A. That's correct.

6 Q. What you did you understand to be some of the other
7 commercial marketed use of Oxine?

8 A. Bio-Cide, basically, would sell this at any situation
9 where disinfection or odor control was necessary. They had,
10 I know, labeling that talked about most every hard surface
11 disinfection that you could do, ice machines, floors, walls,
12 our famous swine pens and animal holding pens and chicken
13 barns, dairies, for cleaning the floors. Basically, they
14 had a very, very broad target. That's their prerogative,
15 and the product worked in many of those situations.

16 Q. I didn't mean to cut you off.

17 A. I am sorry. So, you know, there was a myriad of uses,
18 but most of these uses were like our hard surface
19 disinfection that we described earlier.

20 Q. If you could turn in your binder to Plaintiff's
21 Exhibit 626. Can you identify what this document is?

22 A. Yeah. This is the approved labeling, the approving
23 agency is the United States Environmental Protection Agency,
24 and package insert for Oxine.

25 Q. Is this labeling consistent with your understanding of

Dzaiabo - direct

1 the commercial product?

2 A. Yes. This basically gave all sorts of directions for
3 use in these areas that we just discussed.

4 Q. Does it give a warning about contact with the eyes?

5 A. Yes, absolutely. If you look down here, under the
6 "Caution" statement, it says, Avoid contact with the eyes.

7 Q. And I want to refer you to Page 7, because you
8 mentioned it. At the top of the page, it suggests the
9 product be used to disinfect commercial animal confinement
10 facilities, such as poultry houses, swine pens, cat barns
11 and kennels. Did I read that correctly?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Is that what you were referring to before?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. Mr. Dziabo, I am sure everyone in the courtroom is
16 wondering, why were you thinking of putting this product in
17 peoples' eyes?

18 A. Well, first of all, I felt that we had to look outside
19 the realm of what was accepted and generally available for
20 ophthalmic products if we were going to come up with new
21 products. The old story of insanity, you know, doing
22 something over and over again and expecting a different
23 result. If we wanted to have a different product with
24 different attributes and solve the existing marketing and
25 performance problems, we needed to look exhaustively and at

Dzaiabo - direct

1 all different types of concepts. Again, I was very
2 interested in this material because I could make the active
3 agent disappear at some point in time.

4 Q. That was through the gaseous approach which you
5 described?

6 A. That's correct.

7 Q. Thank you, Mr. Dziabo. We can pull that down.

8 You have the samples, the 100, 500, and 200 in
9 the door at Allergan. You have gotten some limited
10 information from Mr. Danner.

11 What was the next step, or the first step you
12 took at Allergan with respect to developing this product
13 further?

14 A. The next step would be to look at its toxicity
15 profile. Obviously, with all of the information, as you
16 just pointed out, the first step would have been, wait a
17 second, is this stuff ever going to be able to be used in
18 the eye? What really is the toxicity profile if we want to
19 tee it up for the eye?

20 Q. I would ask you to turn to the next tab in your binder
21 at Joint Exhibit 84. Do you have that, Mr. Mr. Dziabo?

22 A. Yes, I do.

23 Q. What are we looking at here?

24 A. This is a, I think, a project report or a monthly
25 report of activities in our toxicology group.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. And did any of this information refer to Purogene?

2 A. Yes. If you go down and look at Items 10, 11, and, on
3 the back side, 12.

4 Q. What kind of tests are these?

5 A. These are specific tests that Allergan used, and, in
6 many cases, developed the regimen. We had a dedicated
7 toxicology group as part of our R&D resources, which was
8 very useful to us, because these people, they were just
9 absolute experts in testing products for ophthalmics, and
10 they were in-house, so we had direct access to them.

11 Item No. 10 here, this is an acute high toxicity
12 and cytotoxicity study on 1,000 ppm Purogene in conjunction
13 with the Permalens soft contact lenses.

14 Q. How does this differ from the Draize test that we saw
15 before?

16 A. It differs in several very significant ways. The
17 biggest one being that if you -- that we used a contact lens
18 in conjunction with the solution. And, basically, what this
19 study does is that you soak the lens in the solution,
20 overnight, like a patient would, then they take the lens out
21 and put it on a rabbit eye. We had skillful technicians
22 that could get contact lenses directly onto the rabbit.
23 Then we would put drops of the solution in the eye during
24 the day to sort of take the first step look at, Well, what
25 happens in a rabbit eye, in the rabbit eye model?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. Now you are at the lower concentration now, 1,000 ppm?

2 A. That's correct.

3 Q. And that's, if I do my math, 120th of the original
4 concentration information you had. Is that correct?

5 A. That's correct.

6 Q. Okay. What were the results of these acute eye
7 toxicity and cytotoxicity studies?

8 A. If we go back, Mr. Exline, to Allergan 0971177.

9 Q. May I suggest, Mr. Dziabo, you look at the page prior.
10 I am looking at that. It is a conclusion.

11 A. I went too far. I am sorry. I went too far. Yes.
12 The first one corresponds to 1175, I am sorry.

13 Q. If we could look at the conclusion in that document on
14 0971176.

15 A. Hold on a moment. I think Mr. Exline has to catch up
16 with us.

17 Q. One more forward, 0971176.

18 What is the conclusion of this toxicity study?

19 A. Basically, we found that the regimen was slightly
20 irritating but not discomforting, toxic, or cytotoxic in
21 rabbit eyes.

22 Q. Are you okay?

23 A. Yes. Cytotoxic is just a terminology meaning toxic to
24 cells.

25 Q. Mr. Dziabo, let's look at the conclusion again. What

Dzaiabo - direct

1 are the results of this toxicity study on the 1,027 ppm
2 Purogene?

3 A. It was slightly irritating but not discomforting,
4 toxic, or cytotoxic to rabbit eyes.

5 Q. Was this a concern to you?

6 A. Can we take a small break. Because it is not clearing
7 up.

8 THE COURT: Let's take a stretch. Thank you.

9 (Recess taken.)

10 MR. SINGER: Thank you, Your Honor.

11 BY MR. SINGER:

12 Q. Before we broke, Mr. Dziabo, we were talking about
13 Joint Exhibit 84. The conclusion we have up on the screen.
14 I had asked you, were the results you got that Purogene was
15 slightly irritating a concern to you?

16 A. Yes, they were, because this was one cycle, if you
17 will. In other words, one overnight soak, one application
18 to the lens, one day. And, obviously, a contact lens, the
19 patient is going to wear their lenses every day for years.

20 Q. Was this also a much more dilute concentration of the
21 product?

22 A. Well, this was a dilute -- this was the 1000,
23 nominally, ppm concentration. So the issue here was that if
24 this happened one day, is there a cumulative toxic effect at
25 1000 ppm.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. Did your group also conduct antimicrobial tests around
2 this time?

3 A. Yes, we did. That's part and parcel of the evaluation
4 of these types of products. As I mentioned previously,
5 looking at the toxicity profile versus the antimicrobial
6 profile at various concentrations and solution conditions.

7 Q. Who were you working with on this project?

8 A. I was working with Paul Ripley at that time.

9 Q. If you could turn to the next tab in your binder,
10 which is Joint Exhibit 85. Do you have that in front of
11 you?

12 A. I do.

13 Q. TWEL actually, if you would look at the back pages of
14 that, not the front memo page, but Allergan 971234 and
15 Allergan 971235. Do you have those?

16 A. Yes, I do.

17 Q. Whose handwriting is this?

18 A. This is Paul Ripley's handwriting.

19 Q. What experiment is he running here?

20 A. This is a antimicrobial evaluation. As you can see in
21 the upper right-hand corner, an experiment, that is an
22 experiment number, it is not real legible, it is 7162. That
23 was just a sequential number assigned to experiments in
24 microbiology.

25 What he was looking at here was that he was

Dzaiabo - direct

1 testing various concentrations of the Purogene, if you can
2 slide down a little there, Mr. Exline, and highlight that.

3 Q. You are referring to the methodology?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. What are the concentrations of Purogene being tested?

6 A. In this case you can see that there are basically five
7 different samples. And you have Purogene A, B, and C.
8 Purogene A being .1 or 1000 ppm. B being .05, 500 ppm,
9 and C being .02 or 200 ppm.

10 Q. Were these the three solutions you received from
11 Bio-Cide?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And then there are two more solutions, 383 and 384.
14 What are those?

15 A. These are controls. The 383 is Allergan Hydrocarina
16 disinfectant solution, which was the Allergan soft lens
17 disinfecting solution which had been used previously in the
18 marketplace. And it consisted of S. marcescens and
19 proterium (phonetic) as the disinfecting system.

20 Q. What is 384?

21 A. That is a product called Lesandt A, which was a
22 three-percent hydrogen peroxide.

23 Q. There are some results at the bottom of the page. And
24 there are lots of numbers and pluses. I would like to try
25 to explain this for the Court. What are we looking at? And

Dzaiabo - direct

1 we will just try the first row. Where are we looking at
2 there?

3 A. The far left-hand row, this is the test organism.

4 Q. What is the organism here?

5 A. The organism, the first organism in the first box is
6 *Serratia marcescens*. I realize that is very hard to read.
7 I happen to know that because that is a standard target
8 organism that we test against. Remember, we talked about
9 typical target organisms.

10 Q. Okay. Then it says initial 6.7 times 10 to the 5th.
11 What does that mean?

12 A. Well, it also says CFU per milliliter. That is
13 colony-forming units per milliliter. Basically, what that
14 means is you got 6,700,000 *Serratia marcescens* organisms per
15 milliliter in that sample.

16 Q. Then there is a time column. What does that refer to?

17 A. That is the time at which samples are taken for assay
18 to determine how many microorganisms remain after the
19 addition of the antimicrobial solution.

20 Q. Then we have the five different samples tested, 380,
21 381, 382. The first three are Purogene. Correct?

22 A. That's correct. And I believe in the order of 1000,
23 500, 200, declining concentration as we move to the right.

24 Q. What are the results for the 1000 ppm solution?

25 A. For the 1000 ppm solution, you can see, after five

Dzaiabo - direct

1 minutes of testing, that basically there are no
2 microorganisms left. Well, I am sorry, they were able to
3 find about a hundred microorganisms, less than a hundred
4 microorganisms. Basically they can't count. That is too
5 small a number to count. That is why you see at ten minutes
6 the less than 10 to the 2 sign. That basically means all
7 the microorganisms are gone.

8 Q. What about the 500 ppm?

9 A. The 500 ppm shows less activity. You can see
10 comparison at the different time points, at no time point do
11 we get the total kill, that is the less than the 10-to-the-2
12 organisms.

13 Q. How about the 200 ppm?

14 A. The 200 ppm is even worse. Compare, for instance, 15
15 minutes across the board for the 1000, there is none left.
16 But for the 500, now we have two times 10-to-the-three, and
17 for the 200 it's six times 10 to the 5. Basically, no
18 change from the initial concentration.

19 Q. Now, there are other target organisms in this
20 experiment as well?

21 A. Yes, there are. They follow a similar pattern.

22 Q. Overall, what were the results for the 200 ppm
23 Purogene?

24 A. They re pretty poor for the time frames we are looking
25 at here.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Very little activity against the bacteria. The
2 first three organisms listed here, which are the Serratia
3 marcescens, the S. aureus, and the Pseudomonas aeruginosa.
4 Pseudomonas aeruginosa is a very bad player and one we watch
5 very carefully because it is implicated in many eye
6 infections.

7 Q. What are the results for the 500 ppm? I am sorry.
8 Just across the board, across the spectrum of the agents?

9 A. The 500 ppm is better than the 200 but less effective
10 than the 1000.

11 Q. What are the results for the 1000?

12 A. The 1000 are excellent against the bacteria. As I was
13 mentioning, the first three organisms were bacteria. The
14 fourth organisms in sequence is Candida albicans, or C
15 albicans, which is a yeast. And the last organism is A.
16 niger, or Aspergillus niger, which is a fungi.

17 Q. What was the activity against the fungi?

18 A. The activity against the fungi was absolutely
19 nonexistent for any of the concentrations.

20 Q. I would like you to turn to the first page of Joint
21 Exhibit 85 and ask you to describe the experiment in this
22 memorandum?

23 A. This is basically the same experiment, except now we
24 are looking at differences in pH. In this case, we tested
25 .1 percent Purogene or 1000 parts per million of Purogene at

Dzaiabo - direct

1 7.3, 8.2, and 9.2 pH.

2 Q. What were the results?

3 A. The results were very similar to the experiment that
4 was done that was shown previously in Paul Ripley's
5 notebook. And, again, the 1000 ppm lacked activity against
6 the fungi.

7 Q. That is referenced in Paragraph 3?

8 A. That's 3, yes. Spores -- they are a little loose with
9 their terminology here -- fungal spores, spores in general.

10 Q. It says chlorine dioxide. That's consistent with the
11 gas generation approach that Bio-Cide told you about?

12 A. Well, what's happening here, this is the Purogene 1000
13 ppm. It stabilized chlorine dioxide.

14 Q. What did you understand the active ingredient in
15 Purogene to be at that time?

16 A. That was represented as chlorine dioxide.

17 Q. Based on these results, would it have been suitable to
18 use Purogene as a disinfectant?

19 A. It was looking pretty grim for Purogene-stabilized
20 chlorine dioxide as a disinfectant.

21 Q. Did you try anything like upping the concentration to
22 see if it would work?

23 A. Yes, we did.

24 Q. Can I have you turn to the next document in your
25 binder, PTX-579. What is this document describing?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. This is a report to Paul Ripley from our microbiology
2 department concerning a test, an evaluation of Purogene 2
3 percent, 1 percent, and .1 percent.

4 Q. .1 percent is a thousand ppm?

5 A. .1 percent is a thousand ppm.

6 Q. And two percent is the full two-percent solution?

7 A. By comparison, 20,000 ppm.

8 Q. And what were the results of this experiment?

9 A. This experiment was set up to test just the yeast and
10 the fungi, because we were pretty confident of the activity
11 against the bacteria. So we really didn't need to re-test
12 that.

13 The issue, the sticking point, was the fungi in
14 the yeast. The results are probably -- let's see, if you
15 look at Item No. 1 here in the summary --

16 Q. What does that say?

17 A. Increasing the concentration from .1 to 2 percent
18 increased the activity against the Candida yeasts -- there
19 were two Candida yeasts used in this instance -- and A.
20 fumigatus spores, that's Aspergillus fumigatus, but showed
21 no change in the activity against A. niger.

22 Q. Would you characterize this experiment as a failure?

23 A. In the context of disinfectants, yes, we still weren't
24 getting any activity against A. niger.

25 Q. By this time were you starting to understand more

Dzaiabo - direct

1 about the chemistry in Purogene?

2 A. We certainly dug into it to a greater degree.

3 Q. What was your understanding at that time as to what
4 was in the bottle?

5 A. What was in the bottle was a solution of stabilized
6 chlorine dioxide that would release chlorine dioxide upon
7 demand as needed for disinfection.

8 Q. Upon investigating what actually was in the bottle,
9 what did you learn the constituents of Purogene to be?

10 A. Well, in looking at the chemistry and what we could
11 find in the literature concerning the chemistry of chlorine
12 dioxide, one of the things we noticed was the presence of a
13 chloride molecule --

14 Q. I am sorry. Did I cut you off?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. I am sorry.

17 A. So we decided to do some analytical chemistry
18 comparing the purity to the other possible constituents of
19 the stabilized chlorine dioxide solution. I don't know if I
20 said that correctly.

21 We tried to say, okay, if this is a component of
22 that solution, how does it compare to the full solution? In
23 other words, we were trying to disassemble it a bit.

24 Q. What did you learn was actually in the Purogene?

25 A. Well, we learned that, through analytical chemistry

Dzaiabo - direct

1 techniques, through this methodology, by comparing the
2 different constituents which we understood would be in the
3 stabilized chlorine dioxide, that we came to the conclusion
4 that stabilized chlorine dioxide was chloride, nothing more,
5 nothing less.

6 Q. Did it generate chlorine dioxide spontaneously as
7 Bio-Cide claimed?

8 A. We could not find any evidence of spontaneous
9 generation of chlorine dioxide.

10 Q. Was that just at the pH that Purogene was sold at or
11 also in the pH's in the 7 where you said you were working?

12 A. At physiological pH, that was our finding as well.

13 Q. How did you feel when you learned it was just sodium
14 chloride?

15 A. Well, a little disappointed, because, obviously, the
16 mechanisms of action as represented by Bio-Cide, was, I
17 think, as they termed it in their own packet, was amazing.
18 And, indeed, you know, we thought it was amazing and we
19 said, wow, this may be, you know, for us, in contact lens
20 care, would be a breakthrough for us.

21 So we felt a bit deflated, and, of course, a
22 bit, you know, depressed about where we were, because we
23 had, you know, spent a good deal of time and energy at this
24 point to get to the place where we kind of had a basic
25 understanding of the toxicities and the antimicrobial

Dzaiabo - direct

1 capabilities, and now what really was in it.

2 Up until this point in time, in dealing with
3 Bio-Cide, they had also always insisted on supplying us the
4 samples. They would not give us any information as to what
5 was in the product so that we could do our own
6 manipulations.

7 Q. Did this mean you would have to change your approach
8 for a disinfectant?

9 A. Yes, it did, indeed.

10 Q. What would the changed approach have to be?

11 A. Well, basically, we weren't getting the kill that we
12 needed. So just using the Purogene in this and of itself at
13 concentrations, you saw at a thousand ppm we had irritation.
14 Well, we certainly couldn't take it up to 20,000 ppm or 2
15 percent then, because we would probably magnify that
16 toxicity.

17 So we had to put our thinking caps back on, and
18 what we started looking at was a two-part system. In other
19 words, Purogene at a very low concentration, then we would
20 activate, and we knew how to do that, activate the chlorine
21 dioxide gas at the point in time we wanted to have a
22 disinfectant event. Then the gas would dissipate.

23 Q. So you were working to create the gas itself?

24 A. We were working to create the gas itself, because --
25 and we had experiments that told us that gas, chlorine

Dzaiabo - direct

1 dioxide gas, plus Purogene was very effective.

2 Q. Did you do studies to determine the feasibility of
3 using the chlorine dioxide itself in a, for example, a
4 bottle of an ophthalmic product?

5 A. Yes, because the first idea was, okay, let's take the
6 bottle, Purogene, at the appropriate concentration where we
7 could set the toxicity level, where it was acceptable, and
8 then we just simply add in the required amount of chlorine
9 dioxide gas, cap it up, and here is your product.

10 Q. What were the results of those studies?

11 A. They were very disappointing.

12 Q. If I could ask you to turn to the next tab in your
13 notebook, which is Plaintiff's Exhibit 270. Can you
14 identify, generally speaking, this document for the Court?

15 A. Yes, this is Paul Ripley's laboratory notebook.

16 Q. If you would turn to Page 55 and 56 of the notebook.

17 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, we have an objection.
18 Just foundation.

19 MR. SINGER: I would be happy to.

20 BY MR. SINGER:

21 Q. Mr. Dziabo, did you work with Mr. Ripley on a daily
22 basis at Allergan?

23 A. Yes, I did.

24 Q. Did you supervise Mr. Ripley?

25 A. Yes, I did.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. Did you review his laboratory notebook frequently?

2 A. Yes, I did.

3 Q. Have you reviewed his laboratory notebook in the
4 context of your work with Allergan?

5 A. Yes, I have.

6 MR. SODIKOFF: We withdraw it.

7 MR. SINGER: Thank you.

8 BY MR. SINGER:

9 Q. I was referring to Pages 55 and 56. You described a
10 disappointing result. What is this experiment we are
11 looking at?

12 A. This is an experiment where we tested our hypothesis,
13 or we tested, could we keep the chlorine dioxide gas in the
14 container.

15 Q. And I see some numbers on the bottom, on the left-hand
16 side. What are those numbers?

17 A. Those are the results of the experiment. I will give
18 you a brief outline of the experiment.

19 Basically, what happened here, what Mr. Ripley
20 did was took ten-milliliter glass vials. He took a
21 solution, and he liberated 25 parts per million of chlorine
22 dioxide gas. And then he filled that into the bottles.

23 Now, these glass vials, one set he stoppered
24 with a rubber stopper and the other set he left open, with
25 no stopper, put them the hood, and then pulled samples at

Dzaiabo - direct

1 various time frames.

2 So if you want to blow that matrix up there at
3 the bottom of the page.

4 You can see, in the left-hand column, he has the
5 capped vials. In the right-hand column are the uncapped
6 vials.

7 At zero time, you can see the column marked C,
8 there is the 23.77 parts per million of the chlorine dioxide
9 gas. As you can see, for the uncapped bottle it is
10 identical. Obviously, this is the beginning of the
11 experiment.

12 For the capped bottles, you can see that by 360
13 minutes, we are down to 12.3 ppm. Lost almost half of the
14 chlorine dioxide gas at six hours. Hardly a viable,
15 practical solution for a product that needs to sit on the
16 shelf for two years.

17 For the uncapped, it's even more dramatic, as
18 you might expect. After six hours, there is hardly any of
19 the chlorine dioxide left.

20 Q. Are those results depicted graphically on the next
21 page?

22 A. Yes, they are. That is maybe a better way to
23 conceptualize it here.

24 If Mr. Exline can blow that up.

25 Q. What is the top line, Mr. Dziabo?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. Okay. Mr. Exline failed to get the far right-hand,
2 which gives you the -- there we go.

3 The round circles are capped, the triangles are
4 uncapped. These are the results graphically displayed from
5 the matrix on the previous page.

6 Q. Again, could you would you characterize this
7 experiment as a failure?

8 A. In the context of a product that has a practical use
9 of two years, indeed.

10 Q. Mr. Dziabo, what was the next step in the development
11 process of the Purogene product for use in ophthalmics?

12 A. Basically, what we were looking for here, then, is to
13 try to determine some of the further physiochemical effects
14 of the solutions.

15 Q. Now, at some point did you formalize the relationship
16 with Bio-Cide in writing?

17 A. We did, indeed, do that as well.

18 Q. Was there an agreement signed with Bio-Cide?

19 A. Yes, there was.

20 Q. What did this agreement relate to?

21 A. This agreement was an option agreement for a
22 disinfectant product.

23 Q. If I could have you turn to Joint Exhibit 63. Is this
24 that agreement?

25 A. Yes, that is the agreement.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. And was the agreement focused on disinfectant uses
2 only?

3 A. This agreement was focused strictly on --

4 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor. That
5 calls for a legal conclusion.

6 THE COURT: What was the agreement?

7 MR. SINGER: It was simply: Was the agreement
8 focused on disinfectant uses?

9 THE COURT: Overruled. You can answer the
10 question.

11 THE WITNESS: Yes.

12 THE COURT: I don't think that calls for a legal
13 conclusion.

14 MR. SINGER: I will ask one followup to make it
15 clear, Your Honor.

16 BY MR. SINGER:

17 Q. Is attached to the agreement, Mr. Dziabo, the
18 standards for disinfecting solutions, at Attachment 1?

19 A. Yes, there is.

20 Q. That is at Allergan 0730498?

21 A. That's correct.

22 Q. Are there standards for preservatives attached to this
23 agreement?

24 A. No, there are not.

25 Q. Thank you. Okay.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 What was the benefit of signing the agreement
2 with Bio-Cide? You said that the product was just sodium
3 chloride. Was there advantages to working with Bio-Cide
4 nonetheless?

5 A. Yes. We discussed that at some length, obviously,
6 before signing this agreement, because we had that knowledge
7 prior to negotiations. And the advantage was that the only
8 supplies of chloride available in the marketplace were
9 fairly impure. They were only like 80-percent purity. That
10 means there was 20 percent of who knows what. And it would
11 have taken us a great deal of time and money to characterize
12 what those impurities were, and also to determine how they
13 varied over time. And that really was adding no value to
14 the project.

15 So the process that Bio-Cide used to produce the
16 Purogene produced a relatively pure, consistent source of
17 sodium chloride.

18 So we felt it was to our advantage to continue
19 our relationship with Bio-Cide in this regard.

20 Q. Now, after entering the agreement, did you do
21 additional work trying to add chlorine dioxide to the
22 Purogene to prove its efficacy?

23 A. Yes, we did.

24 Q. I would ask you to turn to the next tab in your
25 binder, Plaintiff's Exhibit 573, if we could put that up on

Dzaiabo - direct

1 the screen. What is this experiment described, Mr. Dziabo?

2 A. This experiment basically was done to look at
3 antimicrobial activity of solutions with different
4 concentrations of free chlorine dioxide gas in the Purogene.

5 Q. And what happened when you added free chlorine dioxide
6 to Purogene?

7 A. It basically took off, from an antimicrobial
8 perspective, the troublesome organism, the Aspergillus
9 niger. We were now able to eliminate it.

10 Q. If I could have you turn to Table 1, where it has the
11 results. You said it took off. Where do we see that in
12 this table?

13 A. If I might suggest we take a look at the following
14 page, it might be a little easier, because we have already
15 talked about how these tables work. Take a look at the A.
16 niger, you can highlight the A. niger at the bottom, Mr.
17 Exine, please.

18 Okay. You may need to blow that up a little.

19 Q. I think we are at the limits --

20 A. Is that it?

21 Q. Okay.

22 A. Very simple here. As you can see, for the solutions
23 starting with the first column, it is regular Purogene, what
24 we see there and what we had always seen with A. niger, that
25 was noculum. The additional noculum 8 times 10-to-the-5,

Dzaiabo - direct

1 you can see we are 8 times 10-to-the-5 the whole way down.
2 With the addition of the chlorine dioxide, we see total
3 destruction of the A. Niger.

4 Q. The A. Niger was the thing you had trouble killing
5 before?

6 A. You see the Purogene up there. You see the results.

7 Q. Thank you, Mr. Dziabo.

8 A. The answer to your question is yes.

9 Q. Mr. Dziabo, did you also study more scientifically the
10 claim Bio-Cide had made about the spontaneous generation of
11 chlorine dioxide?

12 A. Yes, we did, the so-called reservoir effect, because
13 that was one of the things that attracted us to this
14 conceptualization of the stabilized chlorine dioxide in the
15 first place.

16 Q. Just briefly, what was the reservoir effect again? I
17 know we have said it. Just for the record?

18 A. Chlorine dioxide gas would be generated on demand
19 under certain conditions.

20 Q. And what were your findings as to whether or not there
21 was a reservoir effect?

22 A. Our experimentation showed us there was no
23 reservoir -- the reservoir effect was negligible.

24 Q. If you could go back to what we have marked as
25 Plaintiff's Exhibit 270, Mr. Ripley's notebook. I will

Dzaiabo - direct

1 refer you to Page 105, which is at Allergan 0911919.

2 A. What was the page number?

3 Q. '0911919, it is probably easier to look at the page in
4 Mr. Ripley's notebook.

5 A. I have that.

6 Q. What experiment is Mr. Ripley conducting here?

7 A. This is the experiment to determine if, indeed, there
8 was a reservoir effect as described by Bio-Cide.

9 Q. What was the conclusion with respect to whether or not
10 there was a reservoir effect?

11 A. If we could look at the next page, I believe it has
12 Mr. Ripley's conclusion.

13 Q. If we could highlight the bottom of the page?

14 A. The bottom paragraph.

15 Q. What does that say?

16 A. Basically, what it says here is that, once the
17 solution dropped to 0 ppm ClO₂ -- I better start from the
18 top. I am having problems reading that. I am sorry.

19 Q. We will highlight there at the bottom?

20 A. Can we go back down to the bottom there?

21 Q. Thank you. The bottom paragraph. Thank you. I will
22 help you.

23 A. It's 47.4 parts per million of potential ClO₂ was
24 consumed when the solution was acidified. However, since
25 the bulk of the potential ClO₂ was remaining after the

Dzaiabo - direct

1 solution dropped to a zero ppm of chlorine dioxide gas, ClO₂
2 gas, there cannot be a reservoir effect. There could only
3 be a substantial reservoir effect if there was no potential
4 CO₂ left in the final solution.

5 Q. Now you have debunked most of what -- most of what
6 Bio-Cide has told you about this product and learned for
7 yourselves what it really is. Were you and Mr. Ripley
8 brainstorming other ideas to use the Purogene?

9 A. Well, yes, we were. As you mentioned before, you
10 know, we communicated on a daily basis, if not, even more
11 often than that, especially from an experimental standpoint.
12 And we had gathered a substantial amount of data,
13 characterizing the Purogene solution, from a pH osmolarity.
14 Antimicrobial effects versus concentration. Antimicrobial
15 effects versus PE. Antimicrobial effects versus toxicity.
16 Et cetera, et cetera.

17 So we started to look through this to see if we
18 could pull out something of value or if we could recognize
19 something of value in this regard.

20 This is when we started to really conceptualize
21 the issue, the possibility of the Purite as a preservative.

22 Q. Did you run tests to see if your preservative idea
23 would work?

24 A. We were running tests on many different products at
25 this point in time, yes.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. And where was this work done?

2 A. Some of the earliest work was done with regards to our
3 RGP products.

4 Q. What is an RGP product?

5 A. There are two basic classes of contact lenses. There
6 are soft lenses, which most people are familiar with. They
7 dominate in the marketplace. They are a hydrogel, and they
8 are soft. And there are rigid gas-permissible lenses, RGP.
9 They are rigid and hard, and they address some specific
10 visual correction problems that the soft contact lens
11 cannot.

12 So there is two basic categories. Nevertheless,
13 the RGP lenses need to have their care products as well.

14 Q. What was your role in the RGP group?

15 A. The RGP Products group also reported to me.

16 Q. I want to refer you to the next three documents in
17 your binder together, Plaintiff's Exhibit 596, 581 and 580.
18 If we can put all three up. It will be hard to read but we
19 will make it legible.

20 First off, let's look at the dates. When was
21 the experiment in Plaintiff's Exhibit 596 done?

22 A. That date of the experiment is dated September 4th,
23 1986.

24 Q. Looking at Plaintiff's Exhibit 581, when was that
25 experiment done?

Dzaiabo - direct

1 A. That experiment was done the next day, on September
2 5th, 1986.

3 Q. Then looking at Plaintiff's Exhibit 580, when was that
4 experiment done?

5 A. On 9/9/86.

6 Q. What are these battery of tests that you are running
7 on the Purogene in the RGP group, generally?

8 A. Generally, what is done here is what's called the
9 design of experiments. A series of experiments are put
10 together, usually the formulation group requests these,
11 looking at testing various parameters in the solution which
12 are important for us to gather experimental information on.

13 In this case, it was the microbiology of the
14 product which we called Wet-N-Soak, which was the RGP Care
15 product. And we were looking at possibly the use of the
16 Purogene as an antimicrobial agent for the Wet-N-Soak
17 products.

18 Q. Were preservative efficacy tests run, Mr. Dziabo?

19 A. They were.

20 Q. Where do we see that in this battery of tests?

21 A. You can see it best on -- let's see which one of
22 these? I have all three of them.

23 Q. If it would help, I draw your attention to Plaintiff's
24 Exhibit 581?

25 A. 581 is the best one, yes.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. What does it say there?

2 A. In this case, it says that 200 parts per million of
3 Purogene with the Wet-N-Soak formula, it had a problem with
4 antifungal activity and also the yeast. But it basically
5 passed U.S. PET.

6 Q. Are U.S. PET the preservative efficacy standards?

7 A. That's correct.

8 Q. What was your reaction to these results?

9 A. Very encouraging, and very exciting, because we
10 initially had looked at this product as a disinfecting
11 agent. We thought we had hit a bit of a wall in that
12 regard, but now it appeared there was an alternative use, an
13 exciting new preservative use in the realm of preservation.

14 Q. Did you tell Bio-Cide about it?

15 A. Yes, we did.

16 Q. Were they excited about it?

17 A. They were quite excited about it, as you can well
18 imagine.

19 Q. What happened as a result of these results you got
20 from the RGP group?

21 A. Another meeting.

22 Q. If I could refer -- who was that meeting between?

23 A. This was between representatives from Allergan and
24 Bio-Cide.

25 Q. Was it just you and Mr. Danner this time, or were

Dzaiabo - direct

1 there a whole bunch of people this time?

2 A. No. There were senior representatives from both
3 companies.

4 Q. If I can refer your attention to Defendant's Exhibit
5 226. This is a memo you authored. Is that correct?

6 A. That's correct.

7 Q. What is this memo?

8 A. This is minutes of a meeting, action items, actually,
9 that resulted from the Allergan-Bio-Cide meeting.

10 Q. I refer your attention to the second page of the
11 memorandum, Bio-Cide 534. And Paragraph 2. What does it
12 say in Paragraph 2 was going on?

13 A. This basically discussed the development approach with
14 the Purogene products, the stabilized chlorine dioxide
15 products. And as always, you know, Bio-Cide was very
16 interested in how soon are we going to get to the market so
17 we can generate an income stream. We, of course, wanted to
18 be sure that we had substantiation of safety and efficacy
19 because we are responsible.

20 So we came up with a strategy for moving
21 forward. And that strategy said that the first product that
22 we were going to basically look at would be preservation of
23 normal saline. The second product would be a binary
24 disinfection system, two-part system. And the reason for
25 that is, as we had been unsuccessful in a one-bottle type

Dzaiabo - direct

1 system up to that point in time, but we still felt confident
2 that we could release that chlorine dioxide gas on demand,
3 and that would satisfy our disinfection.

4 However, the ultimate goal would have been a
5 one-bottle system, because a two-part system, you have to
6 understand, you know, when you can do one instead of two,
7 guess what the patient will choose?

8 All right. So the ultimate embodiment of this
9 technology would be the item C, which is a one-step system
10 or one-bottle system.

11 And this was the strategy, so to speak, that was
12 laid out in this meeting.

13 Q. Looking at Paragraph 3, what does that talk about in
14 the memo?

15 A. In this instance, Hampar Karageozian, who was the
16 senior vice president for R&D at Allergan at this point, he
17 proposed that the existing contract be amended to include
18 preservation in light of these proposed strategies.

19 Q. And it was also amended in light of the results you
20 had gotten --

21 A. And the results, absolutely, the results.

22 Q. And then, moving forward, in Paragraph 4, what does
23 Paragraph 4 say?

24 A. That basically stated the fact of Allergan's intent to
25 move forward with the preservation concept with the normal

Dzaiabo - direct

1 **saline.**

2 **Q. Was the Bio-Cide-Allergan agreement amended in fact?**

3 **A. It was indeed.**

4 **Q. If you could turn to the next document in your binder,**
5 **which is Plaintiff's Exhibit 375. Do you have that in front**
6 **of you?**

7 **A. Yes, I do.**

8 **Q. Can you identify this document for me, please?**

9 **A. Yes. This is the letter, the cover letter to Hampar**
10 **Karageozian from Bill Knapp at Bio-Cide, indicating that**
11 **they have signed the option agreement, the use of, he says**
12 **our chlorine dioxide. What he means is the stabilized**
13 **chlorine dioxide, the Purogene, as a preservative for**
14 **ophthalmic products.**

15 **And the next page, you will see here, is the**
16 **actual copy of the signed document.**

17 **Q. This is the first reference in the Bio-Cide-Allergan**
18 **written agreement relationship to preservatives. Is that**
19 **correct?**

20 **A. That's correct.**

21 **Q. You have signed the agreement now, after you have done**
22 **the work on the RGP. Did you bring the product forward in**
23 **the buffered saline?**

24 **A. Yes, we started down the pathway towards completing**
25 **the project development and commercial release.**

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. If you could turn to the next document in your binder,
2 Plaintiff's Exhibit 583, can you identify this document for
3 me, please?

4 A. Yes. This is a microbiology test again. The Allergan
5 research microbiology group, AMEM, microbe effectiveness,
6 PET, observed the effective testing of Purogene in isotonic
7 borate buffer.

8 Q. Is this a test with respect to the preserved saline
9 project?

10 A. Yes, it is.

11 Q. In the meantime what were happening with those
12 preservative solutions from Wet-N-Soak?

13 A. Unfortunately, we had another
14 back-to-the-drawing-board moment. We, the next step in the
15 process after defining antimicrobial activity and toxicity
16 is now do we have a stable product, because, practically,
17 speaking, you need two-year shelf life. What we did is
18 entered on what we called accelerated stability testing.
19 The principle there is that, if you store product at a high
20 temperature, it basically speeds up time so that you can get
21 a read on the ultimate shelf life of the product by assaying
22 at various points in time at the higher temperature.

23 I am sorry if I wasn't clear there.

24 The point being the higher temperature mimics a
25 longer time at room temperature. And the results of those

Dzaiabo - direct

1 tests were that we were basically falling out of stability,
2 the Purogene was dissipating within two to three months.

3 Q. Did that surprise you?

4 A. It did. It did, because, well, it surprised us and
5 alarmed us, because the question there is what's it going to
6 do in the other product categories from a stability
7 standpoint.

8 Q. Did you then have to run stability studies on the
9 buffered saline products?

10 A. We did.

11 Q. I would ask you to turn to -- first off, did you work
12 with the concentration in the buffered saline product?

13 A. Yes, we did.

14 Q. I would ask you to turn actually to the next document
15 in your binder, which is 584, just to briefly talk about the
16 work with concentration. What is this document we are
17 looking at?

18 A. Again, this is a report of the results of test PET on
19 borate buffered saline with 50 ppm of Purogene.

20 Q. Does it pass the U.S. PET?

21 A. It does past the U.S. PET.

22 Q. Now get back to the stability, the stability failure.
23 Did you run the stability study on the buffered saline?

24 A. We immediately acted to complete an accelerated
25 stability study on the saline.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. If you could turn in your binder to the next exhibit,
2 Plaintiffs' Exhibit 589, what is that document?

3 A. This is a report from the R&D group, from Tony
4 Frangione, Tony reported to Paul Ripley, he was a tech
5 working for Paul Ripley. This is an elevated temperature
6 stability study of borate buffer saline. We put it at
7 elevated temperature. The generally accepted principle is
8 if you can get through 90 days at 45 degrees C, that is
9 equivalent to two years at room temperature. That's why
10 it's accelerated study.

11 If you look at the matrix at the very bottom of
12 this page, basically, the samples were put up, and there was
13 three samples, as you can see, on days he wrote the average
14 of the Purogene concentration was 54.4. And the pH, of
15 course, pH is important as well, we have to have stability
16 and pH, by eyeball there, it's about 7.33. At 30 days, we
17 had 53.24, and the pH has not moved hardly at all. At 60
18 days, we have 52.56, again, the Ch is very solid. Even at
19 90 days accelerated testing, we had 52 ppm of the Purogene
20 and pH, again, very, very solid.

21 So this was very heartening thing, very
22 surprising, and very exciting, because this was the first
23 time we saw that we had everything that we needed for a
24 product.

25 We had the -- antimicrobial activity with

Dzaiabo - direct

1 regards to PET, we had the toxicity down to 50 ppm, we had
2 the stability. We had the stability with a pH at
3 physiological. These solutions all were isotonic.

4 This gave us a great deal of confidence that we
5 were on the right track to commercializing this product.

6 MR. SINGER: Your Honor, as it happens, I am at
7 a very convenient breaking point. I have 15 minutes left.
8 Would you like to break for the day?

9 THE COURT: Let's finish your direct.

10 MR. SINGER: Okay.

11 BY MR. SINGER:

12 Q. Now, about this time, Mr. Dziabo, despite these good
13 results, was Bio-Cide expressing impatience with the pace of
14 progress on the Purogene?

15 A. Well, I would constantly get calls from Mr. Knapp and
16 Mr. Danner from Bio-Cide saying what's taking you so dang
17 long? Let's move it. Let's go. What can we do ? What can
18 we do to help?

19 Q. Did Mr. Danner express that impatience to you
20 personally?

21 A. Yes, he did.

22 Q. What did you do in response?

23 A. Basically, what I did was I put together what I would
24 call a shopping list of items and data that we would need as
25 part of our commercial release package.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. And if I refer to the next exhibit in your binder at
2 DTX-346?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Do you have that in front of you?

5 A. I do.

6 Q. Is this the letter you wrote with that shopping list?

7 A. It is, indeed, to Mr. Knapp at that time.

8 Q. This was all after you had done the work on
9 characterizing the Purogene as a preservative?

10 A. Yes, it was.

11 Q. Did you receive a response from Bio-Cide on all of
12 these questions?

13 A. We did receive some information, but very, very
14 little. In the end, basically, Allergan had to cover all of
15 these bases with our own either internally generated or
16 reference material.

17 Q. Did you and Mr. Ripley file for a patent for your
18 discovery that the sodium chloride or stabilized chlorine
19 dioxide could be used in and of itself as a preservative?

20 A. Yes, we did.

21 Q. I would ask you to look at Joint Exhibit 1. It should
22 be the next document in your binder.

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Is this that patent?

25 A. Yes, it is.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Q. And are you listed there with Mr. Ripley as the
2 inventors?

3 A. Yes, we are.

4 Q. What stands out for you in the process of obtaining
5 the patent?

6 A. Probably the most remarkable thing was how long that
7 it took.

8 Q. Was it an arduous process, as you understood it?

9 A. Yes, it was an arduous process. It was, you know,
10 bringing everybody up to speed on the technology. Getting
11 the technology reduced into, you know, into pieces that can
12 be, you know, represented in the patent. Understanding all
13 the reference materials. And getting it written and getting
14 it prosecuted.

15 Q. Do you understand that there was an appeal that
16 related to your patent at the United States Patent and
17 Trademark Office?

18 A. Yes, I do.

19 Q. Did you win that appeal?

20 A. My understanding was the appeal was -- we did win the
21 appeal and the patent was issued.

22 Q. I would like to look at Claim 1 of the patent, if we
23 could. If we could just put the two halves together on the
24 screen, I think it will make this go a little faster.

25 The first clause in the claim is, a method for

Dzaiabo - direct

1 preserving an aqueous ophthalmic formulation, et cetera. Do
2 you see that?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. The term ophthalmic, what does that refer to?

5 A. Any type of product that's used in or around the eye.

6 Q. How does that differ from what you were doing at State
7 Chemical, for example?

8 A. Well, again, tabletops don't scream. State Chemical,
9 they were inanimate objects, hard surface disinfection.

10 Q. You will see in the second line it refers to enhancing
11 the shelf life. Again, what was generally understood in the
12 field to be the minimum shelf life?

13 A. The minimum practical shelf life for a product is, has
14 been determined to be two years.

15 Q. Then the next phrase says, if we could highlight,
16 "comprising incorporating into said aqueous ophthalmic
17 formulation stabilized chlorine dioxide in an amount
18 effective to act as the sole preservative."

19 Do you see that?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. Have you seen a definition in the patent for
22 stabilized chlorine dioxide?

23 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor. This
24 seems to be getting into claim construction.

25 MR. SINGER: I don't need to ask that question.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 BY MR. SINGER:

2 Q. What is the stabilized chlorine dioxide, as you
3 understand it?

4 A. It is the chloride solution.

5 Q. Then it says it acts as the sole preservative. What
6 does that mean?

7 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor. This is
8 again claim language. I don't know if he is qualified to
9 interpret it.

10 MR. SINGER: I am just asking for what his
11 understanding of his claimed invention is.

12 THE COURT: Overruled.

13 THE WITNESS: -- is that the predominant,
14 primary agent that's affecting preservation is the
15 stabilized chloride dioxide by sinks.

16 Q. Is it the gas or is it the chloride?

17 A. It's the chloride.

18 Q. And then, the next part of the claim is a pH, it says
19 that there is a buffer component in an amount effective to
20 maintain said aqueous ophthalmic formulation at the pH in
21 the range of about 6.8 to about 8.

22 Do you see that?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Why is that important?

25 A. Again, the optimal situation for patient safety and

Dzaiabo - direct

1 comfort is to match the native pH of the eye.

2 Q. In that claim pH range, it is your understanding, that
3 it is chlorida doing the antimicrobial action?

4 A. That's correct.

5 Q. Is that different from what Bio-Cide told you when
6 they walked in the door all those years ago?

7 A. That's correct.

8 Q. And is that a different pH than what Bio-Cide provided
9 you?

10 A. It was, Bio-Cide's Purogene was formulated at 8.5 to
11 9.0.

12 Q. When did they say when you dropped the pH in the 7s
13 would happen?

14 A. They said you would dilute it. You would drop it.
15 The addition would cause the liberation of carbon dioxide.

16 Q. The last couple of phrases refer to the osmolarity, at
17 least one acceptable tonicity component. We talked a little
18 bit about osmolarity. Then I want to focus on the last
19 phrase, which talks about no germicidally effective amounts
20 of any positively charged, nitrogen containing cationic
21 polymers. What does that refer to in your understanding?

22 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor. We have
23 had a claim construction.

24 THE COURT: I am capable of recollecting how I
25 construed the terms.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 MR. SODIKOFF: Thank you, Your Honor.

2 BY MR. SINGER:

3 Q. What is your understanding of that?

4 A. I can answer it?

5 Q. Yes, I think you can.

6 A. Again that basically means that there is no quaternary
7 ammonium compound in the solution.

8 Q. And quaternary ammonium compound is another type of
9 preservative?

10 A. It's a commonly used preservative in the
11 classification of the quaternium that we previously used in
12 the AHDS, and also like benzylalkonium chloride as well.

13 Q. Do you believe you and Mr. Ripley are the inventor of
14 this claim?

15 A. Absolutely.

16 Q. Do you believe you are the inventor of the other
17 claims in the patent?

18 A. Absolutely.

19 Q. Have you heard accusations in this case that you are
20 not the inventor of these claims?

21 A. Yes, I did.

22 Q. And that they were invented by Bio-Cide?

23 A. Yes, I have.

24 Q. What do you think of those?

25 A. I would say that that is incorrect. The

Dzaiabo - direct

1 conceptualization and the inspiration to take this product
2 into the preservative range, that is the stabilized chlorine
3 dioxide, was solely the invention of Mr. Ripley and myself.

4 Q. Have you also heard accusations in this case that you
5 weren't candid with the Patent Office?

6 A. Yes, I have.

7 Q. Do you understand that one of those accusations is
8 that you didn't show the Patent Office a patent application
9 that Bio-Cide had filed?

10 A. That's correct.

11 Q. Before being shown it in your deposition in this case,
12 do you recall ever seeing that patent application before?

13 A. I have no recollection of that event.

14 Q. You have also been accused of withholding information
15 from the Patent Office related to toxicity. Do you
16 understand that?

17 A. Yes, I do.

18 Q. Are you aware that one of those accusations relates to
19 the so-called Wentworth '521 patent?

20 A. Yes, I am.

21 Q. I will refer you in the binder to the last document in
22 your binder, Defendant's Exhibit 130, which is the Wentworth
23 patent. Do you have that in front of you, sir?

24 A. Yes, I do.

25 Q. First off, Mr. Dziabo, is that piece of prior art

Dzaiabo - direct

1 cited in your patent?

2 A. Indeed, it is. It is actually the fourth citation
3 under the references cited U.S. patent documents.

4 Q. I am going to refer you to some specific information
5 in the Wentworth patent and Column 3, on the second page of
6 Defendant's Exhibit 130, where it says E, do you see that
7 there?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. "Installation of a one to 240 dilution of dioxide was
10 non-irritating in guinea pigs." Do you see that?

11 A. Yes, I do.

12 Q. What does that say to you about the suitability of
13 stabilized chlorine dioxide in your experience in ophthalmic
14 formulations?

15 MR. SODIKOFF: Objection, Your Honor. Calls for
16 a legal conclusion -- I am sorry, an opinion.

17 THE COURT: Mr. Singer.

18 MR. SINGER: Mr. Dziabo is being accused of
19 inequitable conduct for not disclosing this information. He
20 has talked about toxicity information, what is and not
21 relevant to his experience.

22 THE COURT: I understand. The objection is
23 overruled.

24 MR. SODIKOFF: Your Honor, we just don't -- I
25 don't think we have made an accusation anywhere against Mr.

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Dzaiabo.

2 MR. SINGER: If --

3 THE COURT: If the issue --

4 MR. SINGER: If the issue is withdrawn, I can
5 conclude my examination.

6 MR. SODIKOFF: We do have an inequitable conduct
7 defense. But we have not made specific accusations that --

8 THE COURT: That is counsel's interpretation of
9 the defense that has been advanced. You will have an
10 opportunity to examine on this.

11 MR. SINGER: Thank you, Your Honor

12 BY MR. SINGER:

13 Q. I was asking you, Mr. Dziabo, as someone who worked in
14 the area of ophthalmic formulations, what does this guinea
15 pig data in the Wentworth patent say to you?

16 A. It really does not give me any substantive information
17 in that the guinea pig model has never been the one relied
18 on for in vitro, in vivo testing of ophthalmic products.

19 Q. That was a rabbit model we saw before?

20 A. The models you saw previously were all rabbit models.

21 Q. Lastly, do you understand that you have been accused
22 of withholding the Still Meadow toxicity studies from the
23 PTO during examination at the United States Patent Office?

24 A. Yes, I have.

25 Q. And we can go back to those, those are Defendant's

Dzaiabo - direct

1 Exhibit 348. They are near the front, Mr. Dziabo, about the
2 sixth or seventh document in?

3 A. Yes, I have got it.

4 Q. Just to conclude, what were the results of this Still
5 Meadow toxicity study for the Oxine product?

6 A. Again, if you turn to the page Bio-Cide 0000742, under
7 the summary document, the last paragraph, "The test material
8 was minimally irritating in non-washed eyes and mildly
9 irritating in washed eyes."

10 Q. Was that a negative concern to you about the
11 suitability of stabilized chlorine dioxide as an ophthalmic
12 preservative?

13 A. Indeed, it was a concern.

14 MR. SINGER: I have no further questions, Your
15 Honor.

16 THE COURT: We will have cross-examination
17 tomorrow. We will adjourn for the evening.

18 (Court recessed at 5:10 p.m.)

19 - - -

20

21

22

23

24

25